OWNER'S MANUAL

Thank you very much for choosing this vehicle.

In order to correctly operate and maintain your vehicle, please take the time to read this manual carefully.

After reading, please leave the manual in the vehicle for future reference. Please leave this manual in the vehicle at the same time of resale, as the new owner will also need to read the information in it.

All the information and specifications in this manual are current at the time of printing.

Remember that authorized service centre knows your vehicle best and has factory-trained technicians and OEM parts to guarantee your safety. Do not use non-OEM parts or accessories to modify your vehicle. Modifying will affect the functionality, safety and durability of your vehicle.

According to the specification of equipment and features of your vehicle, some descriptions and illustrations may differ from that on your vehicle.

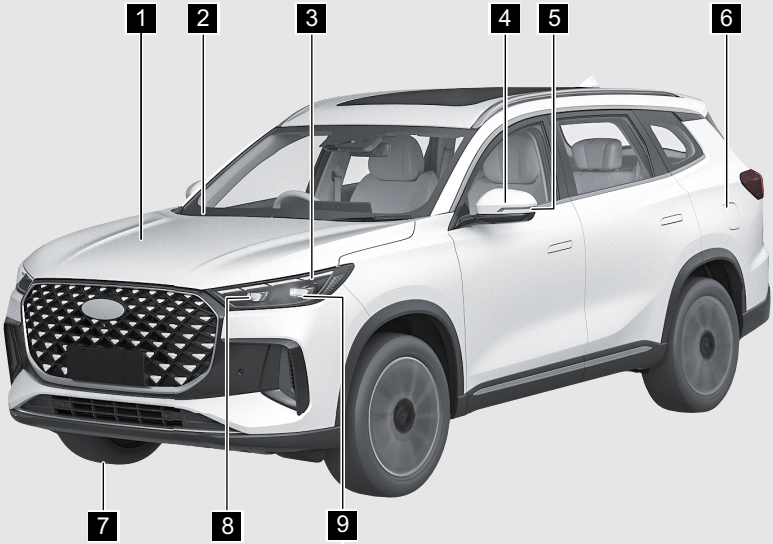
Any data, descriptions and illustrations provided in this manual cannot be used as the basis for any insurance claim.

We reserves the right to make changes in design and specifications at any time without notice.

All rights reserved. This document should not be reproduced or copied, in whole or inpart, without the written permission.

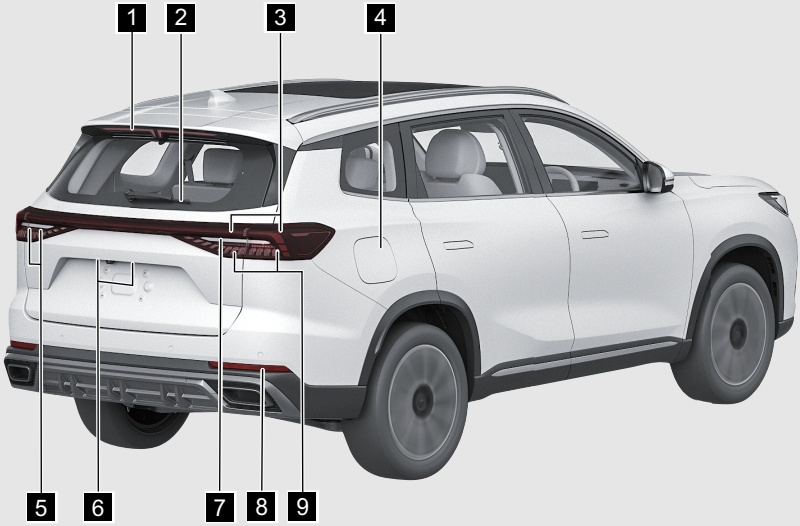
Happy driving!

Version No: T18FL4PHEVRHDOM25ENUK01
Issued June 2025



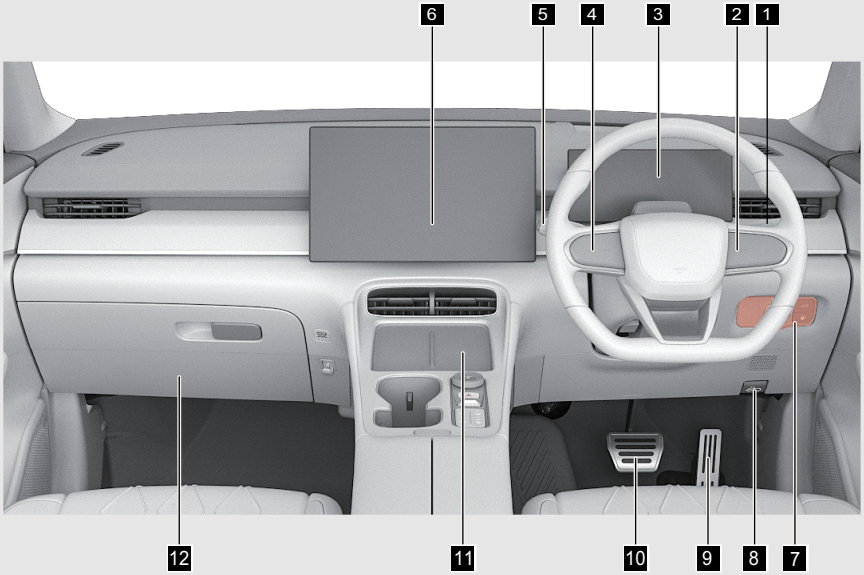
1 Front Compartment Cover P.141
2 Front Wiper Blade P.40
3 Position Light P.41
Turn Signal Light P.43
Daytime Running Light P.43
4 Outside Rear View Mirror P.35
5 Side Turn Signal Light P.43
6 Fuel Tank Cap P.146
7 Tyre P.271
8 Low Beam Light P.41
9 High Beam Light P.42

Note: Please refer to the actual vehicle.



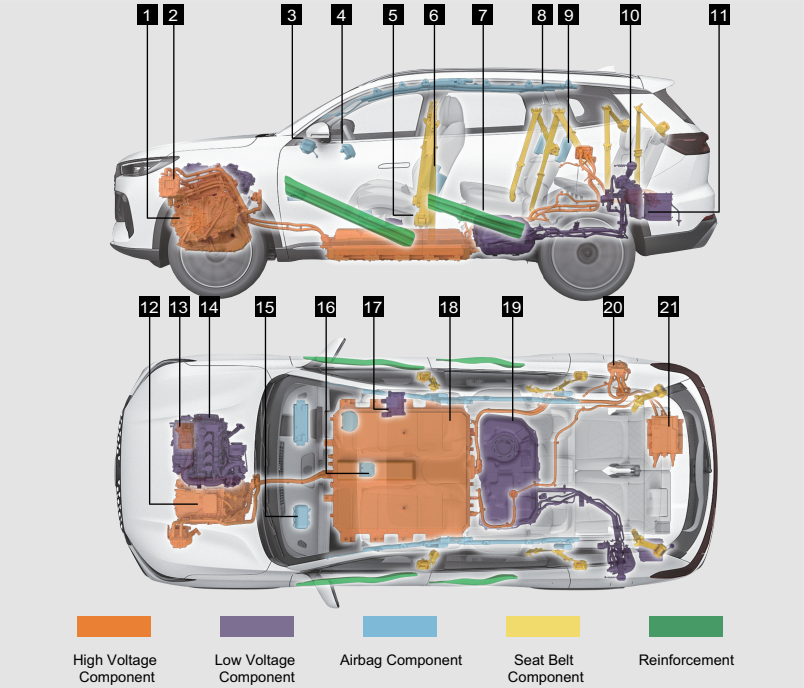
1 High Mounted Brake Light P.43
2 Rear Wiper Blade..... P.41
3 Position Light..... P.41
4 AC Charging Port Cover..... P.228
4 DC Charging Port Cover P.232
5 Turn Signal Light..... P.43
6 License Plate Light..... P.41
7 Reverse light P.43
8 Rear Fog Light..... P.41
9 Brake Light..... P.43

Note: Please refer to the actual vehicle.



1 Column Shift Switch P.160
2 Audio Button P.101
3 Instrument Cluster P.23
4 Cruise Button P.173
5 Wiper Switch P.38
6 Audio System P.96
7 Headlight Switch P.41
Power Back Door Switch P.143
Fuel Tank Cap Release Switch P.146
8 Front Compartment Cover Release Lever P.141
9 Accelerator Pedal
10 Brake Pedal
11 Wireless Charging Area P.116
12 Glove Box P.137

Note: Please refer to the actual vehicle.



1 Hybrid Transmission

2 Front Motor Controller

3 Front Passenger Airbag

4 Driver Airbag

5 Seat Belt Pretensioner (If Equipped)

6 Side Airbag (If Equipped)

7 Anti-collision Panel

8 Side Curtain (If Equipped)

9 Second Row Side Airbag (if equipped)

10 Fuel Filler

11 Battery (12 V)

12 High Voltage Power Distribution Unit

13 Electric Compressor

14 Engine

15 Driver Knee Airbag (If Equipped)

16 Airbag Module

17 Vehicle Control Unit

18 Power Battery

19 High Pressure Fuel Tank

20 AC/DC Charging Port

21 Vehicle-mounted Charger Assembly

1. INTRODUCTION

1-1. How to Read This Manual

How to Read This Manual....2
Table of Contents 2
Pictorial Index 2
Index 2

1-2. Symbols in the Manual

Symbols in the Manual 3

1-3. New Vehicle Inspection

New Vehicle Inspection 4
Delivery Inspection Certificate.....4

1-4. "Face to face" Consultative Service Card

"Face to face" Consultative Service Card 5

1-5. New Vehicle Break-in

New Vehicle Break-in.....9

1-6. How to Save Fuel and Extend Life of Vehicle

How to Save Fuel and Extend Life of Vehicle..... 10

1-7. Precautions Before Driving Vehicle

Safety Check 11
Before Starting Engine 11
After Starting Engine..... 12
When Driving..... 12
Parking Operations..... 12
Parking on Slope..... 13
Check the Exhaust System 14

1-8. Off-road Driving Precautions

Off-road Driving..... 15

1-9. Precautions When Driving in the Rain

When Driving on Slippery Road Surfaces..... 16
Never Drive Through Flooded Water 16

1-10. Winter Driving Precautions

Winter Driving Tips 17
Driving on Road Covered with Ice and Snow..... 18
Tyre Chains 18

1-11. Cybersecurity Notice

Cybersecurity Support Service Update or Termination Notice..... 20
Cybersecurity Notice for Scrapping or Resale 20

2. PREPARATION FOR DRIVING

2-1. Instrument Cluster

Instrument Cluster Overview..... 23
Operation/Malfunction Indicator..... 25

2-2. Steering Wheel

Horn 33
Steering Wheel Heating (If Equipped)..... 33
Adjusting Steering Wheel..... 34

2-3. Rear View Mirror

Inside Rear View Mirror 34
Outside Rear View Mirror..... 35
Outside Rear View Mirror Memory Function (If Equipped)..... 37

Rear View Mirror Automatic Adjustment When Reversing (If Equipped) 37

2-4. Wiper System

Wiper Operation 38
Replacing Wiper Blade 40

2-5. Lighting System

Exterior Lighting 41
Interior Lighting 43
Headlight Leveling Adjusting 44
Follow Me Home Function 45
Smart Vehicle Locating Function 45
Intelligent High Beam Assist (IHC) 46
Fogging Instructions for Light 46

2-6. Seat

Correct Sitting Posture 47
Head Restraint 48
Front Seat 48
Second Row Manual Seat 50
Third Row Manual Seat 51
Front Passenger Seat Massage Function (If Equipped) 52
Seat Heating Function (If Equipped) 53
Seat Ventilation Function (If Equipped) 54
Second Row Seat Heating (If Equipped) 54
Driver Seat Memory Function (If Equipped) 55
Easy Seat Access/Exit Function (If Equipped) 55

2-7. Seat Belt

Seat Belt 56
Seat Belt Pretensioner (If Equipped) 61

2-8. Child Restraint System

Child Restraint System 62
Recommended Child Restraint Systems 64
Top Tether 65
Installing Child Restraint System 67
Enabling and Disabling Front Passenger Airbag (If Equipped) 69
Reminder for Children Staying in Rear Seat (If Equipped) 70

3. INTERIOR FUNCTION

3-1. Key Information

Smart Key 75
Effective Range 78
Keyless Entry 79
Vehicle Arming 81
Immobilizer System 83
Smart Key Vehicle Locating 83
Remote Starting for Smart Key 84

3-2. Doors

Door Unlocking/Locking 84
Door Mechanical Switch 86
Child Lock 87

3-3. Windows

Power Windows 87
Window Remote Control Function 89
Window Jam Protection Function 90

3-4. Panoramic Moon Roof

Panoramic Moon Roof (If Equipped) 91

Moon Roof Remote Control Function..... 93
Moon Roof Jam Protection Function..... 94

3-5. Audio System

Audio View 96
Control Center 97
Setting..... 97
Audio Button..... 101
Voice Recognition Function..... 102
Phone-link..... 102

3-6. Air Conditioning System

Front A/C 105
A/C Setting..... 106
Air Conditioning Operation..... 106
Air Conditioning Heating..... 110
A/C Cooling..... 110
Intelligent Mode (If Equipped) 112
Constant Temperature Cabin Function (If Equipped) 112
Refrigeration/Warming Function of Armrest Box 113
Air Outlets Airflow Control..... 113

3-7. Fragrance System (If Equipped)

Fragrance System (If Equipped) 114
Fragrance Installation Instructions..... 115
Replacing Fragrance 115

3-8. Wireless Charging (If Equipped)

Wireless Charging (CWC) (If Equipped) 116

3-9. OTA Upgrade (If Equipped)

OTA Upgrade (If Equipped) 120
Method for Entering Vehicle Upgrade..... 120
Introduction of Upgrade Mode..... 121
Upgrade Process Operation..... 122
Countermeasures for Abnormal Problems during Upgrading..... 130

3-10. Remote Control System (if equipped)

Remote Control System (if equipped) 131
Introduction 131
Operation environment.... 131
Introduction of Product Functions 131
Vehicle binding and vehicle control activation 131
View vehicle status 132
Remote vehicle control.... 132
Remote A/C ON 133
Energy Cnter 134
Tyre Monitoring 134
Map service..... 134
Binding authorization 135
Account cancellation..... 136

3-11. Storage Space

Storage Space..... 137

3-12. USB Port

Front USB 140
Rear USB..... 140

3-13. Backup Power Supply (12 V)

Rear Backup Power Supply 140

3-14. Sun Visors and Vanity Mirrors

Sun Visors and Vanity Mirrors 141

3-15. Front Compartment Cover

Opening/Closing Front Compartment Cover 141

3-16. Back Door

Manual Back Door 142
Power Back Door (If Equipped) 142
Back Door Emergency Opening 146

3-17. Fuel Tank Cap

4. DRIVING VEHICLE

4-1. Vehicle Power Mode

Inspection and Preparation Before Driving 150
Vehicle Power-on 150
Vehicle Power-off 151

4-2. Steering System

Electric Power Steering System (EPS) 152

4-3. Brake System

Electric Parking Brake System (EPB) 153
Auto Hold System (-AUTO HOLD) 156
Foot Brake 157

4-4. Transmission

Automatic Transmission 159
Column Shift Switch 160

4-5. Airbag

Airbag 162

5. DRIVING ASSIST

5-1. Traffic Sign Recognition System (If Equipped)

Speed Limit Assist System (SLA) (If Equipped) 171

5-2. Speed Limit System

Cruise Control System (CCS) (If Equipped) 171
Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) System 173
Intelligent Speed Control System (If Equipped) 179
Active Speed Limit (ASL) (If Equipped) 180

5-3. Lane Assist System

Lane Assist System (If Equipped) 181
Lane Departure Warning (LDW) 181
Lane Departure Prevention (LDP) 183
Emergency Lane Keeping (ELK) 184

5-4. Lane Keep Assist System (LKA) (If Equipped)

Lane Keep Assist System (LKA) (If Equipped) 186

5-5. Blind Spot Detection Assist System

Blind Spot Detection Assist System (BSD) 187
Door Opening Warning (DOW) System 189
Rear Collision Warning (RCW) System (If Equipped) 190

Rear Cross Traffic Alert (RCTA) System 190

5-6. Driving Safety Assist System

Head Up Display (HUD) (If Equipped)..... 190
Tyre Pressure Monitoring System (TPMS)..... 191
Automatic Emergency Braking (AEB) System/ Front Collision Warning (FCW) System 193

5-7. Intelligent Cruise Control System

Traffic Jam Assist (TJA) System /Integrated Cruise Assist (ICA) System 197
Intelligent Avoidance System (IES) (If Equipped) 201

5-8. Driver Monitoring System (DMS) (If Equipped)

Driver Monitoring System (DMS) (If Equipped) 201

5-9. Parking Assist System

Panoramic View Monitor System (AVM)..... 202
Parking Radar System 206

5-10. Braking Force Control System

Electronic Stability Control System 209
Hill Descent Control (HDC) System (if equipped)..... 210
Anti-lock Brake System (ABS) 211
Extended Function 213

5-11. Plug-in Hybrid Electric Vehicle System (PHEV)

Power Battery 214
New Energy..... 217
Energy Recovery Intensity 218
Operating Mode 219
Charging Device 224
Charging Operation 228
AC charging socket electronic lock..... 232
Releasing Charging Gun Manually (Only for AC Charging)..... 234
Charging Precautions 234
External Discharging..... 236
Low-speed Pedestrian Warning Sound 239

5-12. Data Privacy

Driver Drowsiness and Attention Warning (DDAW) 239
Advanced Driver Assistance System (ADAS)..... 239
Emergency call (eCall) 240

6. IN CASE OF AN EMERGENCY

6-1. Emergency Call Function

ECALL (If Equipped)..... 242

6-2. Handling Vehicle in Emergency

Hazard Light..... 242
Reflective Vest..... 243
Warning Triangle 243
Spare Tools 244

6-3. If You Have a Flat Tyre When Driving

Repairing Tyre in Emergency..... 244

6-4. If Your Vehicle Overheats

6-5. Replacing Fuse

Fuse..... 248
Fuse and Relay Box Layout 249
Checking Fuse..... 250
Replacing Fuse..... 251

6-6. Vehicle Towing

Towing Hook (If Equipped) 252
Towing Vehicle..... 253
Installing Towing Eyelet... 254

6-7. If Battery is Depleted

Removing Battery..... 255
Jump-starting..... 256

7. MAINTENANCE

7-1. Repair and Maintenance

Repair and Maintenance..... 260
Authorized Service centre is at Your Service 260
Reading Vehicle Identification Code Information 261
Safety Check 261

7-2. Normal Maintenance

Normal Maintenance..... 262
Power Battery 263
Checking Oil Level..... 266
Checking Transmission Fluid Level..... 268
Checking Brake Fluid Level 268
Checking Coolant Level 269
Checking Radiator and Condenser 269
Checking Tyre Inflation Pressure 270
Checking Tyres 271
Tyre Rotation 272
Checking Battery..... 272
Checking Air Conditioning Filter 273
Checking Windshield Washer Fluid 273
Checking Wiper Blade..... 273

7-3. Regular Maintenance

Technical Data 275

8. SPECIFICATION

8-1. Label Location

8-2. Vehicle Specifications

Vehicle Dimensions 280
Vehicle Type..... 281
Vehicle Weight..... 281
Vehicle Performance..... 282
Engine Performance 282
Drive Motor 283
Fuel System 283
Suspension System..... 284
Power Battery 284
Battery..... 285
Wheel Alignment..... 285
Wheels and Tyres..... 285
Light Bulb Specification ... 286
Vehicle Components That Are Not Included in the Vehicle Size 286
Your Rights..... 288
Contact Us 288

ALPHABETICAL INDEX

INTRODUCTION

1-1. How to Read This Manual

How to Read This Manual 2

Table of Contents 2

Pictorial Index.....2

Index.....2

1-2. Symbols in the Manual

Symbols in the Manual.....3

1-3. New Vehicle Inspection

New Vehicle Inspection 4

Delivery Inspection Certificate 4

1-4. "Face to face" Consultative Service Card

"Face to face" Consultative Service Card 5

1-5. New Vehicle Break-in

New Vehicle Break-in.....9

1-6. How to Save Fuel and Extend Life of Vehicle

How to Save Fuel and Extend Life of Vehicle 10

1-7. Precautions Before Driving Vehicle

Safety Check..... 11

Before Starting Engine..... 11

After Starting Engine..... 12

When Driving..... 12

Parking Operations..... 12

Parking on Slope..... 13

Check the Exhaust System 14

1-8. Off-road Driving Precautions

Off-road Driving 15

1-9. Precautions When Driving in the Rain

When Driving on Slippery Road Surfaces..... 16

Never Drive Through Flooded Water 16

1-10. Winter Driving Precautions

Winter Driving Tips 17

Driving on Road Covered with Ice and Snow 18

Tyre Chains..... 18

1-11. Cybersecurity Notice

Cybersecurity Support Service Update or Termination Notice 20

Cybersecurity Notice for Scrapping or Resale 20

1-1. How to Read This Manual

How to Read This Manual

There are three ways for you to find the information you need in this manual. Here is a brief introduction of each one.

Table of Contents

The main Table of Contents will tell you which chapter of the Owner's Manual contains the information you need and what page to find it on.

Pictorial Index

The Pictorial Index is a helpful tool to find the required information quickly, especially if you are not familiar with the component name.

Index

This is the fastest method for you to find the information you need. The index contains a complete listing of all the important vehicle terminologies.

1-2. Symbols in the Manual

Symbols in the Manual

The following symbols are used in this manual to draw your attention to particularly important information. In order to minimize the risks as much as possible, please read the instructions on these symbols carefully before driving, and make sure to follow them.

WARNING
Indicates a potentially hazardous situation which, if not avoided, may result in damage to your vehicle, personal injury or even death.

CAUTION
Indicates something that, if not obeyed, could cause damage to or a malfunction in the vehicle or its equipment.

ENVIRONMENTAL PROTECTION
Indicates that the waste must be handled or disposed according to the local environmental protection regulations, otherwise, the environment will be contaminated.

READ
Indicates that the relevant chapter in this manual must be read before any operation.

WARNING and CAUTION relating to personal safety and vehicle safety in this manual are very important. Make sure everyone in the vehicle follows these instructions carefully in order to both enjoy your driving experience and to keep your vehicle in optimum condition.

1-3. New Vehicle Inspection

New Vehicle Inspection

Before delivering the vehicle to you, the Sales & Servicing department of your service centre has inspected it according to regulations. The Sales & Servicing department of Auto should fill the delivery date in the inspection certificate and affix the official seal of service centre.

The service centre will familiarize you with your vehicle and verify it via the "-Delivery Card" which will be signed by both parties.

Delivery Inspection Certificate

In witness whereof, this vehicle has passed delivery inspection as regulated. and quality meets technical specification.

Vehicle Model	
Vehicle Identification Number (VIN)	
Engine Number or Transmission Number	
Vehicle Registration Number	
Official Seal of Sales & Servicing Department:	
Signature of Servicer:	
Delivery Date	
User	
Address	
E-mail	
Telephone	
Have provided and explained the following items for me: • VEHICLE • OWNER'S MANUAL • PRE-DELIVERY INSPECTION	
Signature of User:	
Signature of Servicer:	

1-4. "Face to face" Consultative Service Card

"Face to face" Consultative Service Card

Authorized service centre will provide a dedicated service consultant when you purchase your vehicle. If you have any questions concerning your vehicle, please consult the consultant.

Sheet One (for User)

Name of User: Sales & Servicing Department: Vehicle Identification Number (VIN):	Date of Purchase: Model:
The following items should be confirmed by the user:	
1. Vehicle Delivery and Inspection (Mark a " √ " for " Yes " and a " × " for Other Conditions):	
☐	Have introduced the basic operation of the vehicle to the user and performed the delivery inspection.
☐	Have explained the warranty policies to the user.
☐	Have explained the precautions of driving to the user.
☐	Have explained the importance of regular maintenance and the recommended interval time/mileage for regular maintenance to the user.
☐	Have explained to the user the importance of having regular maintenance or vehicle repairs done at authorized service centre.
☐	Have delivered the Owner's Manual to the users and reminded them to read it.
☐	Have informed the user about the service hotline function and how to use it.
2. "Face to face" Consultative Service Mode Introduction (Mark a " √ " for " Yes " and a " × " for Other Conditions):	
☐	If you have any questions or concerns, ask your service consultant.
☐	The service consultant is the only person authorized by the service centre to answer the user's questions.
☐	Have assigned a dedicated service consultant to each user for "Person to- Person" service.
☐	If the user is not fully satisfied with the service consultant, the user can request another service consultant.
The following items should be confirmed by the user:	

3. Main Work Introduction on Service Consultant (Mark a " √ " for " Yes " and a " × " for Other Conditions):	
☐	Service reception during service and maintenance.
☐	Regular maintenance reminders.
☐	Answer the service/maintenance consultation.
☐	Service/maintenance booking.
☐	Annual inspection reminders.
☐	Regular check up and service reminders and holiday greetings.
☐	Other concerns from the user.
4. "Face to face" Consultative Service Relationship Establishment:	
Service consultant business card	
Signature of User/Date:	
Signature of Service Consultant/Date:	

Sheet Two (for Sales & Servicing Department)

Name of User:	Date of Purchase:
Sales & Servicing Department:	Model:
Vehicle Identification Number (VIN):	
The following items should be confirmed by the user:	
1. Vehicle Delivery and Inspection (Mark a " √ " for " Yes " and a " × " for Other Conditions):	
☐	Have introduced the basic operation of the vehicle to the user and performed the delivery inspection.
☐	Have explained the warranty policies to the user.
☐	Have explained the precautions of driving to the user.
☐	Have explained the importance of regular maintenance and the recommended interval time/mileage for regular maintenance to the user.
☐	Have explained to the user the importance of having regular maintenance or vehicle repairs done at authorized service centre.
☐	Have delivered the Owner's Manual to the users and reminded them to read it.
☐	Have informed the user about the service hotline function and how to use it.
2. "Face to face" Consultative Service Mode Introduction (Mark a " √ " for " Yes " and a " × " for Other Conditions):	
☐	If you have any questions or concerns, ask your service consultant.
☐	The service consultant is the only person authorized by the service centre to answer the user's questions.
☐	Have assigned a dedicated service consultant to each user for "face to face" service.
☐	If the user is not fully satisfied with the service consultant, the user can request another service consultant.
The following items should be confirmed by the user:	
3. Main Work Introduction on Service Consultant (Mark a " √ " for " Yes " and a " × " for Other Conditions):	
☐	Service reception during service and maintenance.
☐	Regular maintenance reminders.
☐	Answer the service/maintenance consultation.
☐	Service/maintenance booking.

☐	Annual inspection reminders.
☐	Regular check up and service reminders and holiday greetings.
☐	Other concerns from the user.
4. "Face to face" Consultative Service Relationship Establishment:	
Service consultant business card	
Signature of User/Date:	
Signature of Service Consultant/Date:	

1-5. New Vehicle Break-in

New Vehicle Break-in

Frictional resistance between the moving parts of a new vehicle is much more likely in the initial use of the vehicle than later on. Therefore, the initial use can have a greater impact on the vehicle's lifespan, operational reliability and economy. We advise that the use of a new vehicle must strictly follow the following guidelines and that the break-in period would be on average the first 1864 miles (3000 km) driven.

■ Driving regulations of new vehicle break-in period

Within the first 621 miles (1,000 km):

- Avoid driving at full speed;
- Driving speed should not exceed 62 mph (100 km/h);
- Avoid driving at maximum speed in each gear.

Within the first 621 - 932 miles (1,000 - 1,500 km):

- Driving speed can be gradually increased to the highest speed;
- Engine speed can be gradually increased to the maximum allowable speed.

■ Driving recommendations after break-in period

- When driving a vehicle, the maximum speed which engine allows to run in short time is 6,000 r/min. When shifting manually, shift to nearby high gear while the tachometer pointer reaches the red indicator zone.
- Engine speed should not be too low while driving, so it will be necessary to shift to the appropriate gear. Do not run the engine at maximum speed in neutral or other gears if the engine is cold.

■ Tyre and wheel break-in recommendations:

When starting to use new tyres, the best adhesion is not available. Therefore, new tyres also need break-in, so the vehicle should be driven slowly and especially carefully within the first 62 miles (100 km) of driving.

■ Braking system break-in recommendations:

New brake lining also needs break-in. Because the brakes cannot provide the ideal brake friction during the first 124 miles (200 km). If the braking efficiency is slightly worse at this stage, increase depression force on the pedal appropriately. This condition also applies to the each replacement of braking lining later.

ENVIRONMENTAL PROTECTION
Avoid running engine at unnecessary high speed. Switching to a high gear in time is helpful to save fuel, reduce operation noise and reduce environmental pollution.

1-6. How to Save Fuel and Extend Life of Vehicle

How to Save Fuel and Extend Life of Vehicle

Saving fuel is largely determined by vehicle conditions and driving habit. Do not overuse the vehicle, which also helps to extend vehicle's life.

The followings conditions are specific tips for fuel saving:

1. Make sure to maintain proper tyre inflation pressure. Insufficient tyre inflation pressure will lead to tyre wear and fuel wastage.
2. The vehicle should not be loaded with unnecessary weight. Heavy loads increase the engine load, resulting in high fuel consumption.
3. Avoid warm-up idling for prolonged periods of time. The vehicle can be driven once the engine runs smoothly. The warm-up time in cold weather will be longer than other seasons.
4. Accelerate slowly and smoothly. Avoid sudden starting.
5. Avoid engine idling for prolonged periods of time. If you need to park vehicle and wait for prolonged periods of time, you should turn off the engine and turn it on again later.
6. Avoid out-of-gear or overspeed of engine. Select proper gears according to driving road conditions.
7. Avoid continuous acceleration and deceleration. Stop-and-go driving will waste the fuel.
8. Avoid unnecessary stopping and braking. You should keep a stable speed. Avoid excessive braking and frequent stops/starts to minimise fuel waste. Maintain a proper driving distance with other vehicles to avoid sudden braking, this will also reduce brake wear.
9. Avoid areas with heavy traffic or traffic jams as much as possible.
10. Do not hold your foot on clutch or brake pedals for prolonged periods of time. This will cause premature wear, overheating and high fuel consumption.
11. Keep a proper vehicle speed on the motorway. The faster the vehicle speed, the more fuel consumption. Decreasing vehicle speed will save fuel.
12. Keep proper front wheel alignment. Avoid collision with road curbs and reduce your vehicle speed when driving on rough road surfaces. Improper front wheel alignment will not only quicken tyre wear, but also increase engine load.
13. Avoid contacting vehicle chassis with mud, etc.
14. Maintain vehicle in optimal working condition. Dirty air filter, improper valve clearance, dirty spark plugs, dirty oil and grease, brakes without proper adjustment, etc. can reduce engine performance and waste fuel. Regular maintenance will extend your vehicle's life and reduce your driving costs.

Your vehicle needs to be serviced more frequently if you regularly drive in severe conditions.

⚠ CAUTION
Never turn off engine when driving downhill. The power steering system and brake system will not operate normally when engine is not running.

1-7. Precautions Before Driving Vehicle

Safety Check

It is better to do a safety check before driving vehicle. A few minutes of checking can help ensure safe and pleasant driving.

⚠ WARNING
If you perform this check in an enclosed garage, make sure there is adequate ventilation.

Before Starting Engine

■ Outside vehicle

1. Tyres (including spare tyre): Check tyre pressure with a tyre pressure gauge and carefully check tyres for cuts, damage or excessive wear.
2. Wheel bolts: Make sure no wheel bolts are missing or loose.
3. Fluid leaks: After the vehicle has been parked for a while, check underneath for leaking fuel, oil, coolant or other fluids (Water dripping from air conditioning after use is normal).
4. Lights: Make sure the headlights, daytime running lights, brake lights, fog lights, turn signal lights and other lights are working properly.
5. Intake grilles: Remove snow, leaves or other obstructions from the intake grilles in front of windshield.

■ Inside vehicle

1. Spare tools: Make sure you have spare tools, such as jack, wheel bolt wrench and spare tyre.
2. Seat belts: Check if the buckles can be fastened securely. Make sure belts are not worn or frayed.
3. Instrument cluster and controls: Make especially sure the malfunction indicator lights, indicator lights, and controls are working properly.
4. Brakes: Make sure the pedal has enough clearance.

■ Engine compartment and engine

1. Spare fuses: Make sure spare fuses are available. All the fuses with amperage ratings designated on the fuse box cover should be provided.

2. Coolant level: Make sure coolant level is proper.
3. Battery and cables: Check for corroded or loose terminals and a cracked case. Check the cables for good condition and connections.
4. Wiring: Check for damaged, loose or broken wires.
5. Fuel lines: Check the lines for leaks or loose connections.

■ Hood

Make sure the hood is locked completely before driving. Otherwise, the hood may tilt up and block front view when vehicle is moving, which could lead to an accident.

After Starting Engine

1. Exhaust system: Listen for any leakage. Repair any leaks immediately if such condition occurs.
2. Engine oil level: Stop vehicle on level ground, turn off engine and wait for 5 minutes, pull out the dipstick to check if the engine oil level is proper.

When Driving

1. Gauges and meters: Make sure the gauges and meters are working properly.
2. Brakes: At a safe place, check that the vehicle does not pull to one side when the brakes are applied.
3. Other abnormal conditions: Check for loose parts and leaks. Listen for abnormal noises.

Parking Operations

Proper parking is an important part of safe driving. Vehicle should be parked in a place with wide road, good view and no impact on traffic. Parking operation steps are as follows:

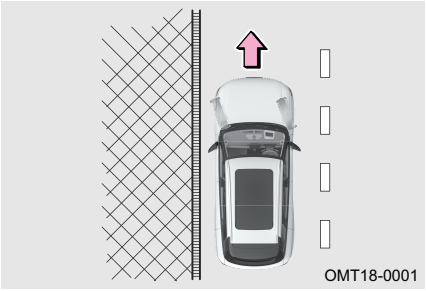
1. Depress brake pedal until the vehicle is completely stopped.
2. Confirm that the electronic parking is enabled.
3. Move shift lever to "P" position.
4. Turn ENGINE START STOP switch to OFF mode.

⚠ CAUTION
When you leave vehicle, make sure to lock your vehicle and carry the keys with you.

Parking on Slope

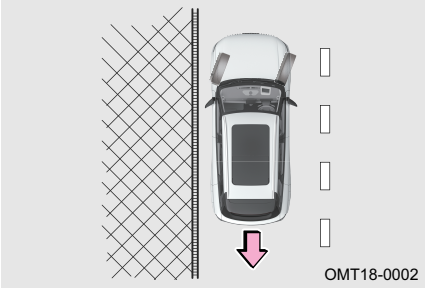
Parking vehicle on a slope is mainly enabled by the force of the parking brake. Failing to apply park brake or any brake malfunction may cause the vehicle to slide down a slope and personal injury or damage to vehicle. When parking on a slope, it is better to face the tyres towards one side of vehicle, to prevent vehicle from moving accidentally.

■ Parking on downhill with curb



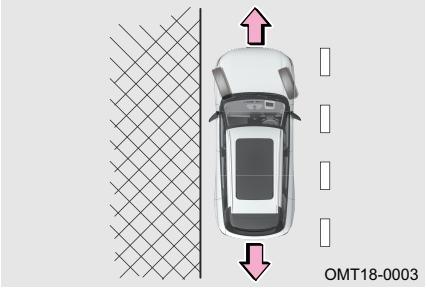
If there is a curb on the roadside, turn the steering wheel to the left to ensure that the front part of the front left wheel is close to or against the curb, to prevent the vehicle from sliding forward down the slope, then apply the parking brake.

■ Parking on uphill with curb



If there is a curb on the roadside, turn the steering wheel to the right to ensure that the rear part of the front left wheel is close to or against the curb, to prevent the vehicle from sliding back down the slope, then apply the parking brake.

■ Parking on uphill or downhill (without curb)



If there is no curb on the roadside, turn the steering wheel hard left to prevent the vehicle driving into the center of the road or sliding down the slope.Turn the steering wheel to the side of the road, so the vehicle is facing away from the center of the road when moving, then apply the parking brake.

■ Carrying passengers

Before driving, make sure all passengers sit in their seats with their seat belts properly fastened. Do not let the passengers sit in the places where there are no seats and seat belts, as they are likely to face serious injury during a collision.

■ Locking the vehicle

- When leaving the vehicle unattended, carry smart key with you and lock all the doors, even if parking the vehicle in the garage or on the road outside your house.
- Vehicle should be parked in bright and spacious places as much as possible, and do not expose valuable items.

■ Exhaust gas

- Avoid inhaling the engine exhaust gas. It contains carbon monoxide (CO), which is a harmful, colorless and odorless gas. It can cause unconsciousness or even death after inhaling.
- Make sure the exhaust system has no leakage holes or loose connections. The exhaust system should be checked regularly. If a change in exhaust gas sound is heard, please have the system checked immediately.
- Do not run the engine in a garage or an enclosed area , unless moving the vehicle in or out. The exhaust gas cannot escape, which may cause serious injury.
- Do not stay in a parked vehicle for prolonged periods of time with the engine running. If it is unavoidable, vehicle should be parked in a spacious area and adjust heating and cooling system to forcibly introduce outside air into vehicle.
- Keep the back door closed while driving. An open or unclosed back door may cause exhaust gas to enter the vehicle.
- To achieve proper operation of vehicle ventilation system, keep intake grilles free of snow, leaves, or other obstructions.
- If you smell exhaust fumes in vehicle, open windows to allow fresh air to enter and check vehicle condition.

Check the Exhaust System

The exhaust system should be checked in the following situations:

1. When you smell exhaust fumes;
2. When you notice a changed noise coming from the exhaust system;
3. When exhaust system is damaged due to vehicle collision;
4. When the vehicle is lifted for inspection and repair.

1-8. Off-road Driving Precautions

Off-road Driving

Always observe the following precautions to minimize the risk of serious personal injury or damage to your vehicle:

- Be careful when driving off road. Do not drive in dangerous areas.
- Place both hands on the outer ring of the steering wheel when driving off roads.
- Always check your brakes for effectiveness immediately after driving on roads covered with sand, mud, shallow water or snow.
- The driver and all passengers should fasten their seat belts whenever vehicle is moving.

⚠ WARNING

- After driving on road surfaces covered with tall grass, mud, gravel, sand, rivers, etc., check if there is grass, bush, paper, rags, stone, sand, etc. adhering to or trapped on underbody. Clear off any above materials from the underbody. If driving vehicle with those matters trapped on or adhering to the underbody, a breakdown or fire could occur.
- When driving off road or on rugged terrain, high speed driving, jumping, sharp turning and striking objects, etc. are forbidden. Failure to do so may cause loss of control or vehicle rollover, resulting in death or severe personal injury. You are also risking expensive damage to your vehicle's suspension and chassis.

1-9. Precautions When Driving in the Rain

When Driving on Slippery Road Surfaces

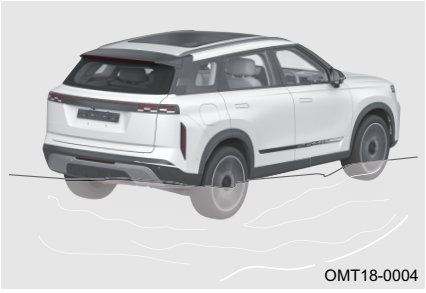
Drive carefully when it is raining, because visibility will be reduced, windows may become fogged-up and roads will be slippery.

- Do not drive at high speed when driving on a motorway in rain, because there may be a layer of water between tyres and road surface, preventing steering system and brakes from operating properly.

⚠ CAUTION

- Sudden braking, acceleration and steering on slippery road surfaces may cause tyre slippage and reduce your ability to control vehicle, resulting in an accident.
- Sudden changes in engine speed, such as sudden braking may cause vehicle to skid, resulting in an accident.
- After driving through a puddle, lightly depress brake pedal to make sure brakes are functioning properly. Wet brake lining may prevent brakes from functioning properly. If brake lining on one side is wet and not functioning properly, steering control may be affected, resulting in an accident.

Never Drive Through Flooded Water


OMT18-0004

The vehicle could be seriously damaged when driving on a road that has flooded.

⚠ CAUTION

- Never drive through water that is deeper than wheel rim.
- Water intrusion into engine can cause it to stall, or cause serious internal damage.
- Water can wash the grease from the wheel bearing, causing rusting and premature abrasion.
- Driving through water may cause damage to your vehicle drive train components. Always visually inspect your vehicle's fluids (e.g. engine oil, transmission fluid, etc.) for signs of leakage after driving through water. Do not continue to operate vehicle if any fluid leaks, as this may result in further damage.
- Vehicle traction and braking performance will decrease while driving through water. The braking distance will increase. Sand and mud that have accumulated around the brake discs may affect the braking efficiency and may damage the brake system components. After driving through water, slightly depress the brake pedal several times to dry the brakes off.

1-10. Winter Driving Precautions

Winter Driving Tips

- Coolant: Make sure that coolant has anti-freezing function. Only use coolant recommended.
- Battery and cables: Low temperature will decrease power of battery. Sufficient power should be stored in battery for starting in winter.
- Oil: In winter, it is recommended to choose appropriate engine oil according to the local temperature condition. The lower viscosity at low temperature, the better fluidity at low temperature, indicating that the lower the ambient temperature at which the oil can be used.
- Door locks: Avoid door locks being frozen. Deicing agent or glycerin should be sprayed into door lock holes.
- Washer fluid: Use washer fluid containing antifreeze. This product is available at authorized service centre and most vehicle component distributors.
- Mudguards: Avoid ice and snow accumulation under mudguards. Failure to do so may cause difficult steering. When driving in cold weather, you should often stop vehicle to check for ice and snow accumulation under mudguards. It is recommended that you should take some necessary emergency items with you according to different driving destinations. Items that need to be put in vehicle: Tyre chains, window snow scraper, sand or salt bag, signal flasher, shovel, jumper cables, etc.

⚠ CAUTION
• Do not use water as a substitute for coolant. • Do not use engine coolant or other alternative washer fluid, otherwise vehicle paint will be damaged.

Driving on Road Covered with Ice and Snow


OMT18-0005

Rapid acceleration on slippery road surfaces, such as snow or ice covered roads, may cause the rear wheels slipping to right or left. Therefore, please drive at low speed and operate carefully.

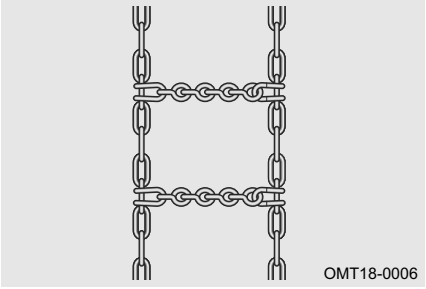
It is possible to build up a layer of water film between the tyre and road surface when driving on wet or slushy roads. This may prevent the steering and braking from operating properly. It is recommended that you enable ESP function on this occasion.

■ Driving out silt and ice and snow road

If drive wheel is stuck in silt or ice and snow, please attempt to shake vehicle at low speed and drive forward and backward repeatedly. Shift the shift lever between forward position and reverse position several times and depress accelerator pedal slightly. Avoid shifting the shift lever between forward position and reverse position for a long period of time, failure to do so may cause excessive transmission wear.

Tyre Chains

Purchase a set of tyre chains that match size of the vehicle tyres. Pay attention to the following precautions when installing and removing chains:


OMT18-0006

1. Follow local regulations when using chains;
2. Install and remove tyre chains in a safe location;
3. Install tyre chains by following the instructions provided;
4. Follow local regulations when using chains;

5. It is recommended to use the beef tendon chains or rubber chains with a thickness not exceeding 12 mm, otherwise, tyres, rims, drive system, brake system and wheel guard plates may be damaged. Vehicle damages resulting from improper use of chains are not covered by warranty;
6. Please consult authorized service centre for details about wheels, tyre size.

⚠ CAUTION

Observe the following precautions to reduce the risk of accidents. Failure to do so may result in the vehicle unable to be driven safely, and may cause death or serious injury.

- Regulations regarding the use of tyre chains vary according to location and type of road. Always check local regulations before installing tyre chains;
- Be sure to use chains that are suitable for your vehicle. Installing chain will affect vehicle handling, please drive carefully. Using improper chains or improper installing of chains may cause an accident and lead to injuries;
- Please follow the instructions provided by the manufacturer of the chains to install and remove chains, vehicle should be parked in a safe place before installation and removal. Be sure to turn off the engine before installing chains (automatic transmission is in P position), place the traffic warning signs if necessary;
- Do not drive vehicle at more than 18 mph (30 km/h) when chains are installed on vehicle, or refer to the vehicle speed limit specified by the manufacturer of chains, whichever is lower. It should avoid dangerous road conditions such as bumps, potholes, sharp turns etc. when installing chains, do not turn steering wheel sharply, lock brake urgently, accelerate or decelerate suddenly etc.

1-11. Cybersecurity Notice

Cybersecurity Support Service Update or Termination Notice

The company has provided cybersecuritysupport services in the corresponding software and equipment of the Internet of Vehicles service, and regularly or irregularly updates or terminates this service.

The scrapped vehicle will stop providing Network Security Services; Network Security Services will maintain essential service after the vehicle is discontinued for 10 years.

We can notify customers through website announcements, emails, in-vehicle systems, mobile phone text messages, voice calls, etc. according to the specific content of the notification.

Email, SMS, and voice calls will be sent to the email address and mobile phone listed in the customer's account registration information.

Cybersecurity Notice for Scrapping or Resale

Before you resell or scrap the vehicle, that is, when you no longer hold the vehicle, you should clear the personal information in the vehicle terminal by yourself.

The company does not assume any responsibility if the personal information of the vehicle terminal is leaked to a third party due to improper operation.

Our franchised dealers are familiar with the relevant regulations and can provide you with consulting services.

2-1. Instrument Cluster

Instrument Cluster Overview 23

Operation/Malfunction Indicator 25

2-2. Steering Wheel

Horn 33

Steering Wheel Heating (If Equipped) 33

Adjusting Steering Wheel 34

2-3. Rear View Mirror

Inside Rear View Mirror 34

Outside Rear View Mirror 35

Outside Rear View Mirror Memory Function (If Equipped) 37

Rear View Mirror Automatic Adjustment When Reversing (If Equipped) 37

2-4. Wiper System

Wiper Operation 38

Replacing Wiper Blade 40

2-5. Lighting System

Exterior Lighting 41

Interior Lighting 43

Headlight Leveling Adjusting 44

Follow Me Home Function 45

Smart Vehicle Locating Function 45

Intelligent High Beam Assist (IHC) 46

Fogging Instructions for Light 46

2-6. Seat

Correct Sitting Posture 47

Head Restraint 48

Front Seat 48

Second Row Manual Seat ... 50

Third Row Manual Seat 51

Front Passenger Seat Massage Function (If Equipped) 52

Seat Heating Function (If Equipped) 53

Seat Ventilation Function (If Equipped) 54

Second Row Seat Heating (If Equipped) 54

Driver Seat Memory Function (If Equipped) 55

Easy Seat Access/Exit Function (If Equipped) 55

2-7. Seat Belt

Seat Belt 56

Seat Belt Pretensioner (If Equipped) 61

2-8. Child Restraint System

Child Restraint System 62

Recommended Child Restraint Systems 64

Top Tether 65

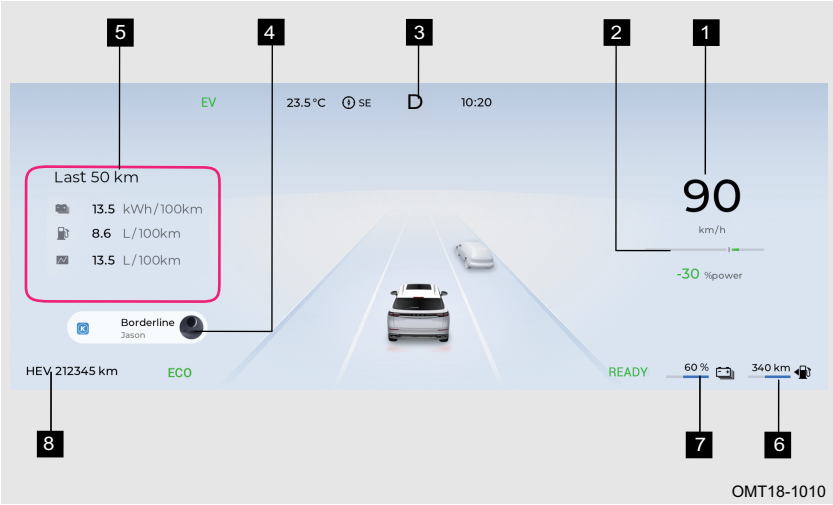
Installing Child Restraint System 67

Enabling and Disabling Front Passenger Airbag (If Equipped)..... 69

Reminder for Children Staying in Rear Seat (If Equipped) ... 70

2-1. Instrument Cluster

Instrument Cluster Overview



1 Speed information

2 Real-time electric power drive information

3 Gear position information

4 Multimedia information

5 Information display area

6 Fuel level information

7 Power information

8 Mileage information

> READ
>
> Instrument cluster display screen has light chasing and star piloting modes, and the current display screen is light chasing mode.

Speed information

Current driving speed (unit: km/h).

> ⚠ CAUTION
>
> Speedometer is affected by tyre size used in vehicle. Only tyres of original size can be used, otherwise the speedometer will not indicate the correct speed. For details of tyre specifications, refer to "Vehicle Specifications".

Information display area

Short press " " button on steering wheel to circularly switch among navigation - since startup - since reset- instantaneous fuel consumption - tyre pressure display.

Since reset: Long press " ○ " button on steering wheel to reset the average speed, average fuel consumption and trip mileage.

Navigation: Long press " ○ " button on steering wheel to enter full-screen map.

Gear position information

Indicates the current selected gear position information of the vehicle.

Mileage information

Display total mileage of the vehicle.

READ
Mileage information can be set to Total Distance/HEV Distance/EV Distance in head unit system.

Multimedia information

Media music and radio information.

Fuel level information

Current remaining fuel in fuel tank and driving mileage.

When instrument cluster displays low fuel level or fuel low level warning light comes on, it indicates that remaining fuel is insufficient. Please add fuel as soon as possible.

READ
When the vehicle is accelerating, braking urgently, turning sharply or driving on a slope, the fuel level information might be inaccurate.

Power information

The current remaining SOC of power battery.

READ
Battery level display can be set to Battery Level/Standard Mileage/Dynamic Mileage in head unit system.

Real-time electric drive power information

Current real-time electric drive power (unit: kw).

READ
The real-time electric drive power positive value indicates driving and negative value indicates charging.

Operation/Malfunction Indicator

When vehicle power is turned to ON mode, some malfunction indicators will come on for a short time, indicating that system is performing self-check. If one system malfunction indicator remains on or flashes after starting the vehicle, please contact authorized service centre for inspection and repair immediately.

The operation indicator remains on, used to alert driver the operating condition of a certain vehicle's system.

Malfunction indicator remains on or flashes, used to alert driver that a certain system of the vehicle is malfunctioning.

Name	Indicator	Description
Daytime running light indicator		The indicator remains on to indicate that daytime running light is turned on.
Position light indicator		The indicator remains on to indicate that position light is turned on.
Turn signal indicator		When the left or right turn signal lights are turned on, the turn signal light on corresponding side flashes. When hazard light is turned on, both left and right turn signal lights will flash simultaneously.
High beam light indicator		The indicator remains on to indicate that high beam light is turned on.
Rear fog light indicator		The indicator remains on to indicate that rear fog light s turned on.
Intelligent high beam assist indicator		The indicator remains on to indicate that intelligent high beam assist is in operating condition.
		The indicator remains on to indicate that intelligent high beam assist is malfunctioning. Please go to the authorized service centre for inspection and repair as soon as possible.
Front seat belt indicator		The indicator remains on to indicate that front seat belt is not buckled or fastened firmly. Wear seat belt and drive safely.
Rear seat belt		The indicator remains on to indicate that rear seat belt is not buckled or fastened firmly. Wear seat belt and drive safely.

Third row seat belt		The indicator remains on to indicate that third row seat belt is not buckled or fastened firmly. Wear seat belt and drive safely.
Door open indicator		This indicator is used to indicate opening/closing status of door. When vehicle speed is lower than 3 mph (3 km/h) and a door is not closed: No alarm sound, door open indicator on corresponding side comes on in red; When vehicle speed is not lower than 3 mph (3 km/h): Door open indicator on corresponding side flashes, and the door opening sound alarm is triggered at the same time.
Electric parking brake system indicator		The indicator remains on to indicate that electric parking brake system is in operating condition currently. The indicator flashes during sudden braking, it is normal and no need to deal with. If it flashes in other cases, it indicates that the system is malfunctioning. Please go to authorized service centre for inspection and repair as soon as possible.
		The indicator remains on to indicate that electric parking brake system is malfunctioning. Please go to the authorized service centre for inspection and repair as soon as possible.
Auto hold system indicator		The indicator remains on to indicate that auto hold system is turned on.
		The indicator remains on to indicate that auto hold system is activated.
Electronic stability program system indicator		The indicator flashes to indicate that electronic stability program system is in operating condition.
		The indicator remains on to indicate that electronic stability program system is malfunctioning. Please go to the authorized service centre for inspection and repair as soon as possible.

Electronic stability program system OFF indicator		The indicator remains on to indicate that electronic stability program system is turned off.
Hill descent control system indicator		The indicator remains on to indicate that hill descent control system is in operating condition.
		The indicator remains on to indicate that hill descent control system is malfunctioning. Please go to authorized service centre for inspection and repair as soon as possible.
Anti-lock brake system indicator		The indicator remains on to indicate that anti-lock brake system is malfunctioning. Please go to the authorized service centre for inspection and repair as soon as possible.
Brake system indicator		The indicator remains on to indicate that brake fluid level is low or brake system is malfunctioning. Please contact authorized service centre for inspection and repair immediately.
Blind spot detection system indicator		The indicator remains on to indicate that blind spot detection system enters level 1 alarm state.
		The indicator flashes to indicate that blind spot detection system enters level 2 alarm state.
		The indicator remains on to indicate that blind spot detection system is malfunctioning. Please go to the authorized service centre for inspection and repair as soon as possible.
Active speed limit indicator		The indicator remains on to indicate that active speed limit enters pre-speed limit state.
		The indicator remains on to indicate that active speed limit enters speed limit state.
Cruise control system indicator		The indicator flashes to indicate that cruise control system enters the pre-cruising state.
		The indicator remains on to indicate that cruise control system enters cruising state.

Adaptive cruise control system indicator		The indicator remains on to indicate that adaptive cruise control system enters the pre-cruising state.
		The indicator remains on to indicate that adaptive cruise control system enters cruising state.
		The indicator remains on to indicate that adaptive cruise control system is malfunctioning. Please go to the authorized service centre for inspection and repair as soon as possible.
Lane departure assist (lane departure warning/lane departure prevention) indicator		The indicator remains on to indicate that lane departure assist is in ON/limit condition.
		The indicator remains on to indicate that lane departure assist is in standby condition currently. The indicator flashes to indicate that lane departure assist is activated.
		The indicator remains on to indicate that lane departure assist is malfunctioning. Please go to authorized service centre for inspection and repair as soon as possible.
Emergency lane keeping indicator		The indicator remains on to indicate that emergency lane keeping is in ON/limit condition currently.
		The indicator remains on to indicate that emergency lane keeping is in standby condition currently. The indicator flashes to indicate that emergency lane keeping is activated.
		The indicator remains on to indicate that the emergency lane keeping is malfunctioning. Please go to the authorized service centre for inspection and repair as soon as possible.
Automatic emergency braking system indicator		The indicator remains on to indicate that automatic emergency braking system is in operating condition currently.

		The indicator remains on to indicate that the automatic emergency braking system is malfunctioning. Please go to the authorized service centre for inspection and repair as soon as possible.
Traffic jam assist system/ integrated cruise assist system indicator		The indicator remains on to indicate that traffic jam assist system/integrated cruise assist system is pre-activated.
		The indicator remains on to indicate that traffic jam assist system/integrated cruise assist system is activated.
		The indicator remains on to indicate that traffic jam assist system/integrated cruise assist system is malfunctioning. Please go to the authorized service centre for inspection and repair as soon as possible.
Gasoline particulate filter indicator		The indicator remains on to indicate that gasoline particulate filter is full, please increase the speed and clean it.
		The indicator remains on to indicate that gasoline particulate filter is malfunctioning. Please go to the authorized service centre for inspection and repair as soon as possible.
Electric power steering system indicator		The indicator remains on to indicate that electric power steering system is not initialized or calibrated. Please contact the authorized service centre for inspection and repair immediately.
		The indicator remains on to indicate that electric power steering system is malfunctioning. Please contact authorized service centre for inspection and repair immediately.
Transmission indicator		The indicator remains on to indicate that transmission system is malfunctioning. Please contact the authorized service centre for inspection and repair immediately.
		The indicator remains on to indicate that transmission system is malfunctioning. Please contact the authorized service centre for inspection and repair immediately.

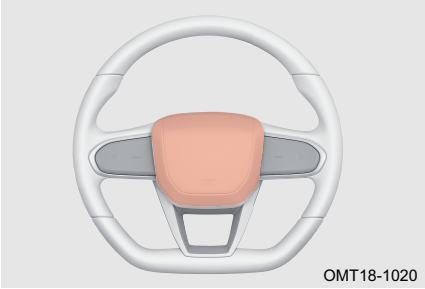
Airbag indicator		The indicator remains on to indicate that airbag is malfunctioning. Please go to the authorized service centre for inspection and repair as soon as possible.
Tyre pressure monitoring system indicator		The indicator remains on to indicate that tyre pressure is incorrect. Please check if tyre pressure is too low or if temperature is too high. If tyre pressure is normal, please contact the authorized service centre for inspection and repair as soon as possible.
High coolant temperature warning indicator		The indicator remains on to indicate that engine coolant temperature is high. Drive vehicle to a safe area and stop, turn vehicle power to OFF mode after idling for several minutes. Please contact authorized service centre for inspection and repair immediately.
EPC malfunction indicator	EPC	The indicator remains on to indicate that engine system is malfunctioning. Please contact the authorized service centre for inspection and repair immediately.
MIL malfunction indicator		The indicator remains on to indicate that the part connected to OBD and related to emission or OBD system itself is malfunctioning. Please contact the authorized service centre for inspection and repair immediately.
Maintenance indicator		The indicator remains on to indicate that the vehicle needs maintenance. Please go to the authorized service centre for inspection and repair as soon as possible.
Warning indicator		The indicator remains on to indicate that vehicle is malfunctioning or has abnormal information. You can inquiry the relevant alarm information in the fault inquiry screen. If it cannot be solved, please contact the authorized service centre immediately.
Fatigue driving indicator		The indicator remains on to indicate to take a rest when driving time exceeds the set time.

Overspeed alarm indicator		The indicator remains on to indicate to pay attention to the vehicle speed when vehicle speed exceeds the set speed limit.
Low engine oil pressure warning indicator		The indicator remains on to indicate that engine oil pressure is low. Drive vehicle to a safe area and stop. Please contact the authorized service centre for inspection and repair immediately.
Charging system indicator		This indicator remains on to indicate the condition of charging system. If this indicator does not remain on when vehicle power is turned to ON mode, or it remains on after engine starts, please go to authorized service centre for inspection and repair as soon as possible.
Charging indicator		This indicator is used to alert the driver that charging connection device is connected.
Discharging indicator		This indicator is used to alert the driver that discharging connection device is connected.
Power battery low charge warning indicator		This indicator is used to alert the driver that the power battery is low. Please charge in time.
Severely depleted power battery indicator		This indicator is used to alert the driver that the power battery is seriously depleted. Please charge in time.
Power limit indicator		This indicator indicates that the power and acceleration performance of vehicle are limited. Please contact authorized service centre for inspection and repair as soon as possible.
High voltage insulation malfunction indicator		This indicator remains on to alert the driver that the insulating property of high voltage system decreases. Please contact authorized service centre for inspection and repair immediately.

High voltage severe insulation malfunction indicator		This indicator remains on to alert the driver that the insulating property of high voltage system seriously decreases. Please contact authorized service centre for inspection and repair immediately.
Power battery malfunction indicator		This indicator indicates vehicle power battery is malfunctioning. Please contact authorized service centre for inspection and repair as soon as possible.
Driving ready indicator	READY	This indicator is used to alert driver that vehicle is ready for normal driving. If the indicator does not come on, it indicates that vehicle is malfunctioning or other conditions are not met, please contact authorized service centre for inspection and repair immediately
Low fuel level warning indicator		The indicator remains on to indicate that vehicle is running out of fuel. Please add fuel as soon as possible.

2-2. Steering Wheel

Horn

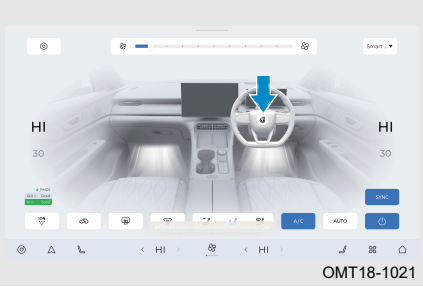

OMT18-1020

To sound the horn, press area near horn mark on the steering wheel.

READ

Obey local regulations regarding usage of vehicle horns.

Steering Wheel Heating (If Equipped)



OMT18-1021

With vehicle in READY state, press "" button, steering wheel heating function is turned on; press "" button again, steering wheel heating function is turned off.

CAUTION

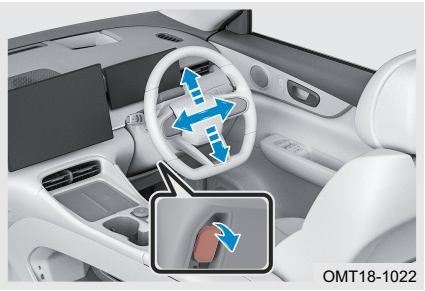
When the following conditions are met, the steering wheel heating function will be turned on:

- Engine is operating.
- Voltage of battery is in normal range.
- Steering heated switch is pressed.

When any of the following conditions is met, the function will turn off after it works for a period of time:

- Engine stops.
- Steering heated switch is pressed again.

Adjusting Steering Wheel


OMT18-1022

Stop vehicle at a safe place away from major traffic, turn vehicle power to OFF mode:

Step 1: Push down adjustment lever and release it;

Step 2: Adjust steering wheel upward and downward/forward and backward to a comfortable angle;

Step 3: Hold steering wheel steady and push adjustment lever to original position;

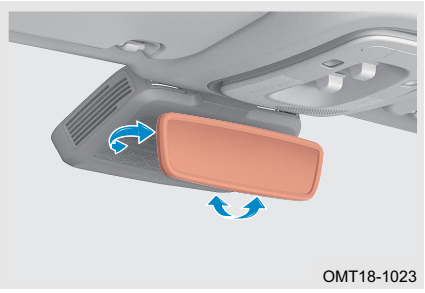
Step 4: Check if the steering wheel is shaking. Repeat operations of step 3 if shaking.

⚠ WARNING

- Do not adjust steering wheel while driving, otherwise it may cause accidents and personal injury.
- Make sure the steering wheel is securely locked before driving, otherwise it may cause accidents and personal injury.

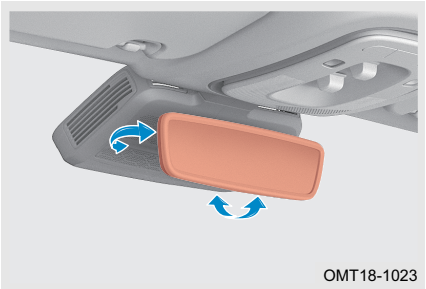
2-3. Rear View Mirror

Inside Rear View Mirror


OMT18-1023

Adjust inside rear view mirror to a proper position before driving, to make sure driver can achieve an optimum view. Manually adjust the inside rear view mirror to desired position.

Automatic glare-resistant

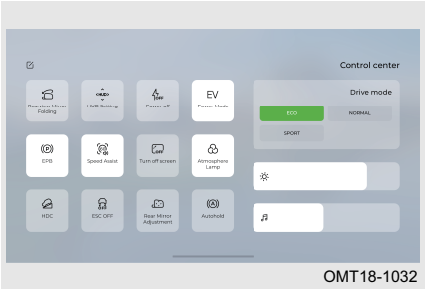


OMT18-1023

When driving at night, the light sensor installed in front/rear of the inside rear view mirror automatically detects the reflected light from the headlights of vehicles behind and automatically adjusts the lens angle to reduce the reflected light from the headlights of vehicles behind.

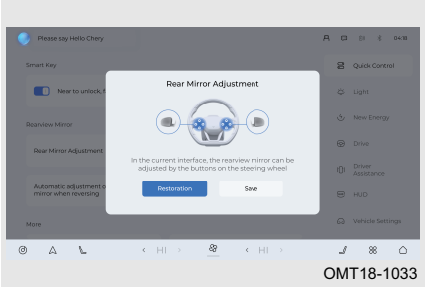
Outside Rear View Mirror

Outside rear view mirror adjustment



OMT18-1032

When the vehicle is powered on, click " " button on the control center to enter the Rear Mirror Adjustment screen. Rear view mirror can be adjusted by steering wheel button on current page.



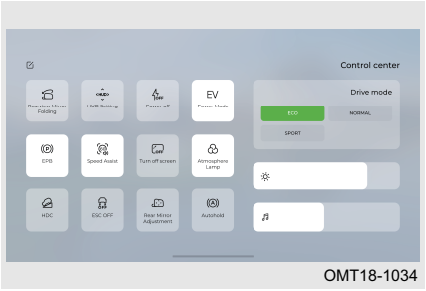
OMT18-1033

When the vehicle is powered on, rear view mirror can be adjusted by steering wheel button on current page through Audio System - Settings - Quick Control - Rear Mirror Adjustment.

⚠ WARNING

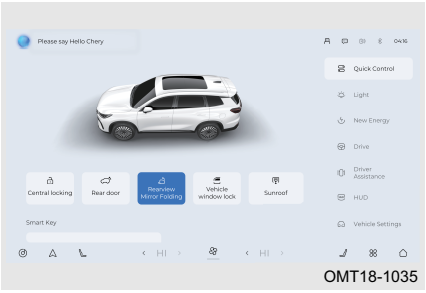
- Do not adjust outside rear view mirror while driving, otherwise it may cause accidents and personal injury.
- Image displayed on outside rear view mirror may differ from the actual, so always drive carefully.

Folding/unfolding of outside rear view mirror



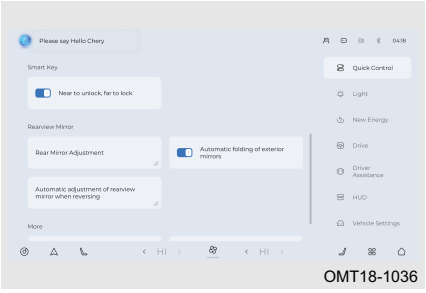
OMT18-1034

When the vehicle is powered on, click " " button on the control center to fold/unfold outside rear view mirror.



OMT18-1035

When the vehicle is powered on, click " " button through Audio System - Settings - Quick Control to fold/unfold outside rear view mirror.



OMT18-1036

When the vehicle is powered on, turn on automatic folding of exterior mirrors through Audio System - Settings - Quick Control; In disarming/arming, outside rear view mirror will be folded/unfolded automatically.

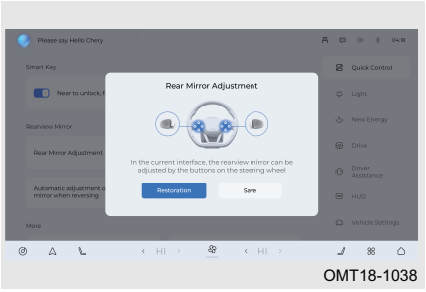
READ

According to visual field requirements, folding angles of the left and right outside rear view mirrors are different. Therefore, when power outside rear view mirrors automatically fold, the left and right outside rear view mirrors are not synchronized, which is normal.

CAUTION

- Do not fold/extend the power outside rear view mirror manually, otherwise it may cause the folding function to fail.
- When folding/extending the outside rear view mirror, do not touch its surface to prevent damage to it with excessive force.
- In cold winter, it is recommended to turn off the outside rear view mirror automatic folding function. This will prevent the outside rear view mirror from being frozen in folding position due to accumulated snow or rain.

Outside Rear View Mirror Memory Function (If Equipped)



OMT18-1038

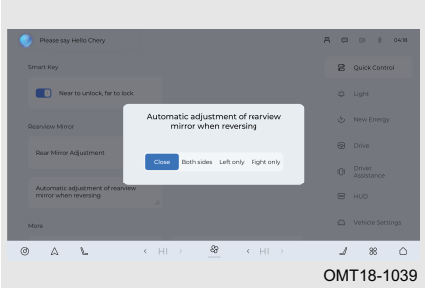
When the vehicle is powered on, it can restore/save and update the memory position according to your needs through Audio System - Settings - Quick Control - Rear Mirror Adjustment.

READ

Seat and outside rear view mirror memory are saved and recalled at the same time.

Rear View Mirror Automatic Adjustment When Reversing (If Equipped)

When vehicle is reversing (shift to R), outside rear view mirror will flip down automatically, so that you can see the curb below; If your visual field cannot be satisfied, you can adjust position of outside rear view mirror lens. When shifting out of R position, the position will be saved automatically (outside rear view mirror automatic flipping down position).



OMT18-1039

When the vehicle is powered on, set automatic adjustment of rearview mirror when reversing (Close/Both sides/Left only/Right only) through Audio System - Settings - Quick Control.

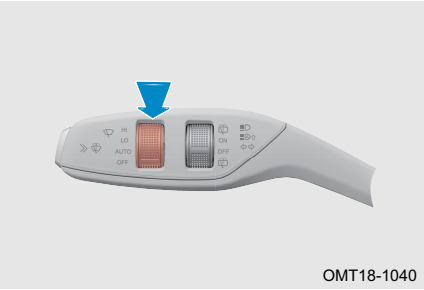
■ Return to position before flipping down under following conditions:

1. When shifting out of R position.
2. Vehicle speed is higher than 10 mph (10 km/h).
3. Switch vehicle power to OFF mode.

2-4. Wiper System

Wiper Operation

Front wiper operation



OMT18-1040

When the vehicle is powered on,:

High speed mode: Push roller to "HI" position to operate quickly and continuously.

Low speed mode: Push roller to "LO" position to operate slowly and continuously.

OFF: Push roller to "OFF" position, wipers will operate automatically at low speed until wipers return to stop position.

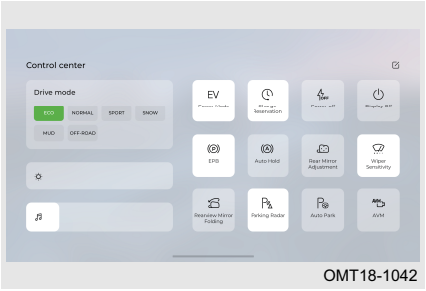
Auto mode: Push roller to "AUTO" position, automatically control the wiping speed of the wiper according to amount of rainfall outside.



OMT18-1041

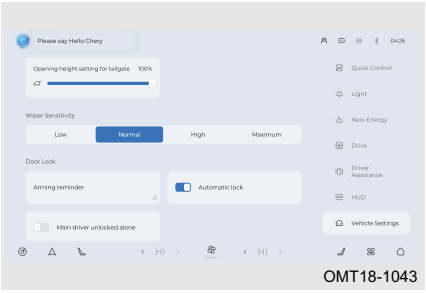
Spray mode: Shortly press the left button of wiper switch and hold, the front washer sprays water, and front wiper operates simultaneously. Front washer will stop operating when the switch is released, the wiper will wipe 3 cycles at low speed, and operate one cycle then stop after a few seconds.

Auto wiper sensitivity



OMT18-1042

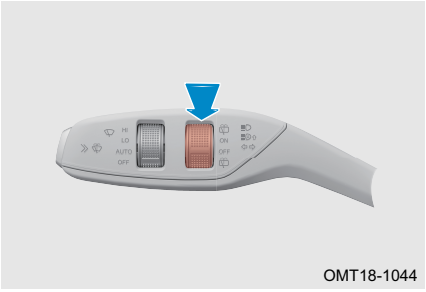
When the vehicle is powered on, click " " button on the control center to set wiper sensitivity cycle.



OMT18-1043

When the vehicle is powered on, set wiper sensitivity (Low/Standard/High/Maximum) through Audio System - Settings - Vehicle Settings.

Rear wiper operation



OMT18-1044

When the vehicle is powered on,:

Push wiper roller to "ON" position, rear wiper operates; Push wiper roller to "OFF" position, rear wiper is turned off.

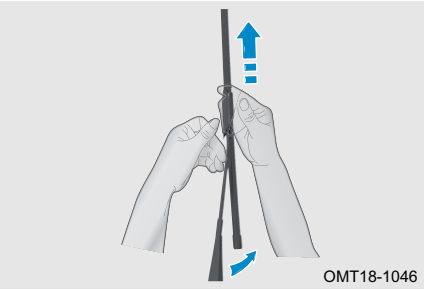
Push roller to " " position from "ON"/"OFF" position and hold, rear washer sprays and rear wiper operates simultaneously.

⚠ CAUTION

- Take care to prevent the wrong addition of antifreeze during adding washer fluid.
- When operating wiper switch to spray water, do not exceed 10 seconds at a time.
- Do not operate wiper switch to spray water when there is no washer fluid in reservoir.
- Do not try to clear a nozzle with a pin or other objects when it becomes blocked, or it will be damaged.
- Do not operate wiper switch when the windshield is dry, as this may damage wiper blade and scratch the windshield.
- Do not operate wiper switch if there are obstacles on windshield, as this may scratch the windshield and damage wiper motor.
- Do not mix water with the washer fluid. Otherwise, it may cause the washer fluid to freeze and damage the washing tank and other parts of the washer system.
- In cold winter, always check if wiper blade is frozen onto windshield before operating wiper switch. If so, defrost it before using, otherwise it may damage wiper blade and wiper motor.

Replacing Wiper Blade

Replacing front wiper blade



Step 1: Shortly press the left button of wiper switch to enter maintenance mode within several seconds after turning vehicle power to OFF mode;

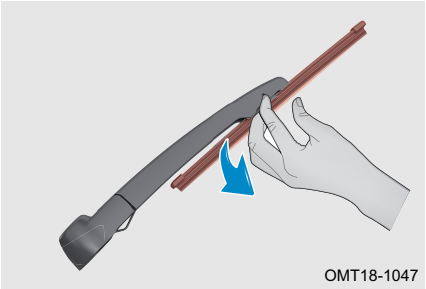
Step 2: Lift the front wiper arm and hold;

Step 3: After rotating to limit position counterclockwise, push wiper blades upward while pressing the lock button, so as to remove the blades;

Step 4: Install the new wiper blades in reverse order, and make sure that the fixing clamp is locked firmly;

Step 5: Check that front wipers operate properly.

Replacing rear wiper blade


OMT18-1047

Step 1: Lift the rear wiper arm and hold;

Step 2: Separate the wiper blade by hand as shown in the illustration;

Step 3: Install the new wiper blades in reverse order, and be sure to install them in place;

Step 4: Check that rear wipers operate properly.

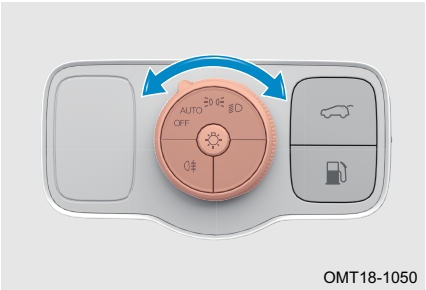
READ
It is recommended that you have wiper blades replaced by someone at authorized service centre to ensure correct fitting.

⚠ CAUTION
Make sure that the wiper arm returns to its original position before driving. otherwise it may damage the vehicle and cause an accident.

2-5. Lighting System

Exterior Lighting

Headlight switch



OMT18-1050

When the vehicle is powered on,:

Auto sensing mode: When headlight is turned off, the switch returns to "-AUTO" position automatically and auto sensing mode is turned on by rotating to "OFF" position. Sense the intensity of external light, turn position lights, low beam lights, license plate light on/off automatically.

OFF: When headlight is turned on, headlight function is turned off and the switch returns to "AUTO" position automatically by rotating to "OFF" position.

Position lights: Rotate to "" position to turn on position lights, license plate lights, ambient light and backlights.

Low beam lights: Rotate to " " position to turn on low beam lights and keep position lights coming on.

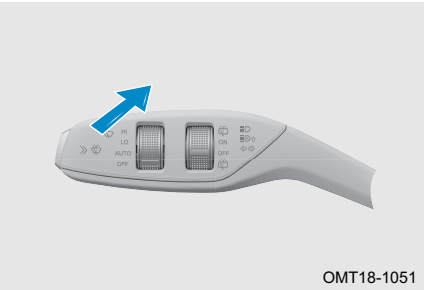
Rear fog lights: When low beam light is turned on, press " " button to turn on rear fog lights.

READ

- When turning off low beam lights, rear fog lights is turned off at the same time.
- When parking vehicle for a long time or before leaving vehicle, make sure that headlight is turned off to prevent the battery from being depleted. Failure to do so may cause that the vehicle cannot be started.

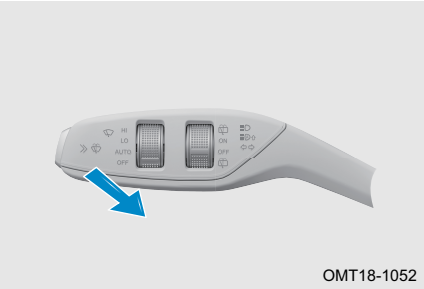
High beam light

■ High beam lights ON/OFF



When the vehicle is powered on, when turning on low beam lights, pull wiper switch away from steering wheel side and release, high beam lights come on; Pull towards steering wheel side and release to turn off high beam lights.

■ High beam lights flash



When the vehicle is powered on, pull wiper switch towards the steering wheel and release it to flash the high beam lights once. At the same time, high beam lights indicator in instrument cluster flashes once.

READ

High beam lights can flash when the low beam lights are off.

Turn signal light


OMT18-1053

When the vehicle is powered on, dial wiper switch upward, right turn signal light is turned on; Dial downward, left turn signal light is turned on.

When turn signal lights are turned on, the indicator in the instrument cluster will flash. As vehicle is turning back after turning, wiper switch automatically returns to center position.

Note: During a slight steering wheel turn, wiper switch may not automatically return to original position.

■ Lane change assist function

When the vehicle is powered on, pull turn signal light switch once but not too far over. This will make the indicator flash 3 times.

Daytime running light

After vehicle starts, the daytime running lights come on.

Brake light

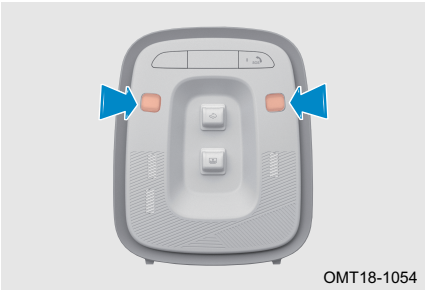
Depress the brake pedal, brake light and high mounted stop light turn on.

Reverse light

When the vehicle is powered on, shift to R, Reverse light turns on.

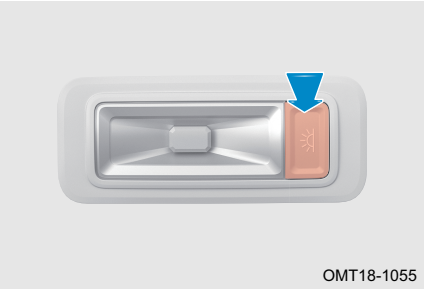
Interior Lighting

Front dome light


OMT18-1054

Touch the front left/right dome light, the front dome light on corresponding side comes on.

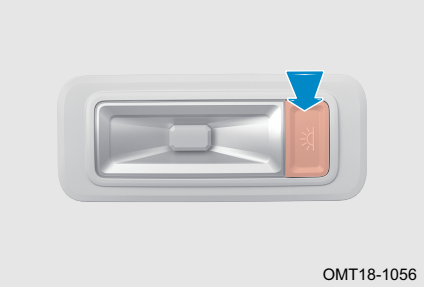
Second row dome light



OMT18-1055

Press " " switch, the second row dome light comes on/goes off.

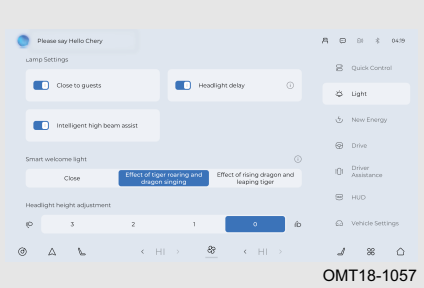
Third row dome light



OMT18-1056

Press " " switch, the third row dome light comes on/goes off.

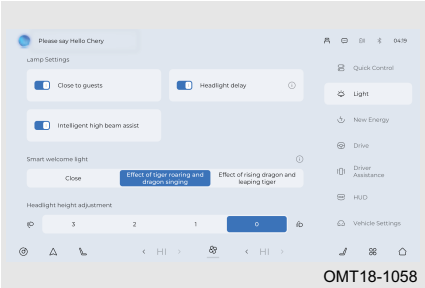
Headlight Leveling Adjusting



OMT18-1057

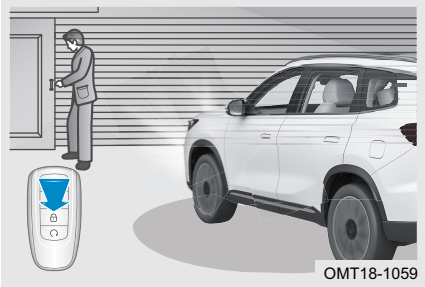
When the vehicle is powered on, set headlight height adjustment (level 0/ level 1/level 2/level 3) through Audio System - Settings - Light.

Follow Me Home Function



OMT18-1058

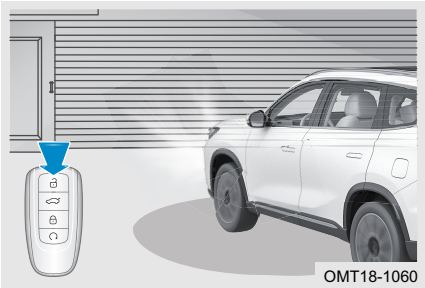
When the vehicle is powered on, turn on headlight delay through Audio System - Settings - Light.


OMT18-1059

ON: Turn vehicle power to OFF mode, turn on headlight automatic mode before stopping. When the vehicle is in a dim environment, press lock button on smart key, and the vehicle is armed successfully. Low beam lights automatically come on for tens of seconds. Press lock button on smart key to activate it again.

OFF: Turn vehicle power to ACC/ON mode, and turn off the headlight (OFF) or reaches the set operating time, the follow me home function will be turned off automatically, low beam lights will turn off immediately.

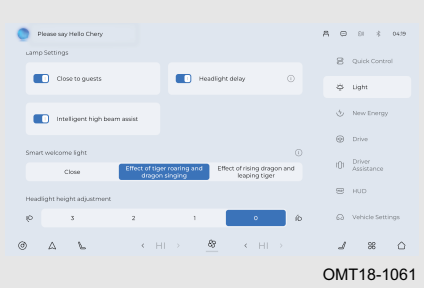
Smart Vehicle Locating Function


OMT18-1060

ON: Turn vehicle power to OFF mode, turn on headlight automatic mode before stopping. When the vehicle is in a dim environment, press unlock button on smart key, low beam lights will come on for tens of seconds. Press unlock button to activate it again.

OFF: Turn vehicle power to ACC/ON mode, turn off the headlight (OFF) or reaches the set operating time, the smart vehicle locating function will be turned off automatically, low beam lights will turn off immediately.

Intelligent High Beam Assist (IHC)



OMT18-1061

When the vehicle is powered on, turn on intelligent high beam assist through Audio System - Settings - Light.

After the vehicle starts, turn on headlight automatic mode. When the low beam lights automatically come on, push wiper switch away from steering wheel side and release, "" white indicator on instrument cluster remains on, and intelligent high beam assist is activated; When intelligent high beam assist is activated and vehicle speed is higher than 24 mph (40 km/h), intelligent high beam assist automatically turns headlight high beam on/off according to road conditions such as meeting, following, and overtaking.

When the intelligent high beam assist is activated, the headlight high beam turns on or flashes, the white indicator "" on instrument cluster goes off. Pull wiper switch away from steering wheel side and release, intelligent high beam assist is reactivated.

READ

- When the ambient brightness is too high, the intelligent high beam assist turns off the headlight high beam automatically.
- When the vehicle speed is lower than 18 mph (30 km/h), intelligent high beam assist turns off the headlight high beam automatically.
- When the left/right turn signal light is activated, intelligent high beam assist can not turn the headlight high beam on/off automatically.

Fogging Instructions for Light

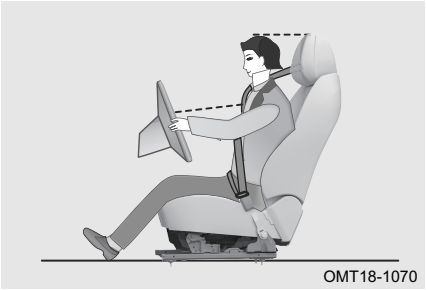
When the weather is cold or humid, the inner side of lights will fog up due to the difference in temperature between the inside and outside. This fog has no effect on service life of lighting system. The vehicle lights generate fog, which gradually begins to disappear in the inner surface of lens for headlight within 30 minutes after the low and high beam lights are turned on. After a period of lighting, the fog disappears naturally. This is normal.

⚠ WARNING

- Following guidelines for driving through water (for example: water depth, speed, etc.) to avoid any water entering the lights.
- After opening light dust cover, reinstall it in place at the end of operation, otherwise water may enter the lights.
- When replacing a bulb, strictly check installation of various light components to make sure that they are installed correctly and sealed properly. When installing rear cover, check its seal ring and keep it clean! Otherwise, it will lead to water and dust entering lights!
- It is strictly forbidden to flush the engine compartment with a high pressure water gun, in particular, the lights cannot be flushed. Due to high pressure of high pressure water gun, accessories on lights may lose or fall off, vent hole and wire harness connector may damp, resulting in water infiltration or moisture not dispersing for a long time, and even severe condensation.

2-6. Seat

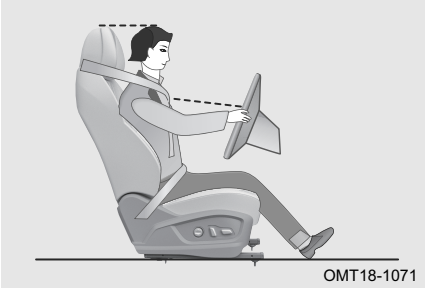
Correct Sitting Posture



OMT18-1070

When sitting, sit slightly inclined backwards (25° backward is ideal) and well back on seatback.

The front seats must not be too close to the instrument panel. The driver should hold the steering wheel with slightly bent arms during driving. His/her feet should also be bent slightly so that he/she can fully depress the pedal. Adjust head restraints properly so that the top of the head restraint is closest to the top of your head.

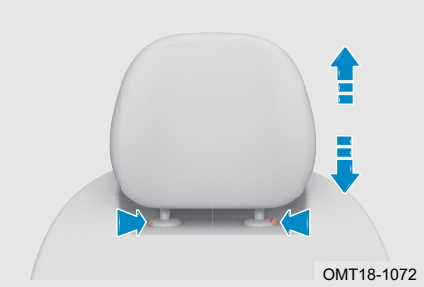


OMT18-1071

The shoulder belt should be over the center of the shoulder and close to the chest, kept away from the neck, the lap belt should lie over the hips but not stomach.

Head Restraint

Adjusting head restraint



Adjust upward: Pull it up directly to a proper height.

Adjust downward: Press the outside unlock button on head restraint, then adjust the head restraint downward.

Remove head restraints: Press and hold 2 unlock buttons at the same time until head restraint is pulled out completely.

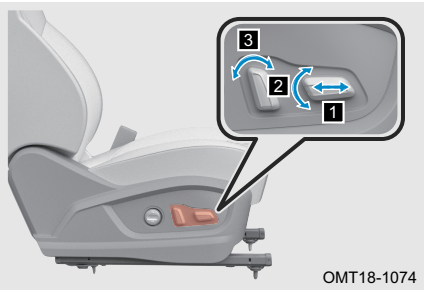
Install head restraints: Align the head restraint with the installation holes and push it down to lock position.

⚠ WARNING

- Do not adjust head restraint while driving, otherwise it may cause accidents and personal injury.
- Make sure that the head restraint is securely locked before driving, otherwise it may cause accidents and personal injury.

Front Seat

Driver power seat



1 Adjusting seat forward and backward

Push the button forward and backward to adjust the seat forward and backward.

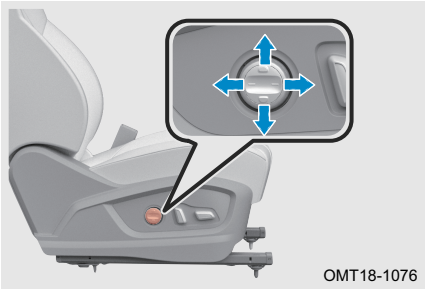
2 Adjusting seat height

Move rear end of button up and down to adjust seat height.

3 Adjusting seatback

Move upper end of button forward and backward to adjust seatback angle.

Adjusting driver waist


OMT18-1076

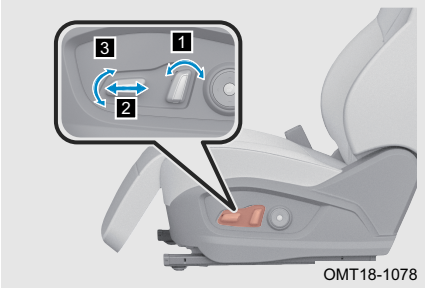
Long press " ⬆ " to support upper part of waist and reduce support to lower part of waist.

Long press " ⬇ " to support lower part of waist and reduce support to upper part of waist.

Long press " ⬅ " to increase support to overall forward side of waist.

Long press " ➡ " to reduce support to overall forward side of waist.

Front passenger power seat



OMT18-1078

1 Adjusting seatback

Move upper end of button forward and backward to adjust seatback angle.

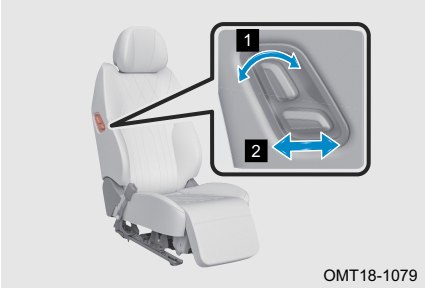
2 Adjusting seat forward and backward

Push the button forward and backward to adjust the seat forward and backward.

3 Adjusting leg support angle (if equipped)

Move front end of button up and down to adjust leg support angle.

Front passenger captain button (If equipped)



OMT18-1079

1 Adjusting seatback

Move upper end of button forward and backward to adjust seatback angle.

2 Adjusting seat forward and backward

Push the button forward and backward to adjust the seat forward and backward.

READ
The seat types of driver and front passenger are different depending on the configuration of the vehicle. Please refer to the actual vehicle configuration.

⚠ CAUTION

- Do not place any items under the seat while adjusting the seat, otherwise, it will damage the seat.
- There is a limit position for lumbar support adjustment. When reaching the limit position, release the adjusting button in time. Otherwise, it will damage the seat.

⚠ WARNING

- Do not adjust seat while driving, otherwise it may cause accidents and personal injury.
- Avoid reclining seatback any more than needed, the seat belts provide maximum protection in a frontal or rear collision when the driver and the front passenger sit inclined slightly backwards and well back in their seats.

The total adjustable front and rear stroke is 240 mm (it can be adjusted 200 mm forward, 40 mm backward); Seatback angle can be adjusted 30 degrees forward, 50 degrees backward; Height can be adjusted 40 mm upward, 20 mm downward.

Second Row Manual Seat

Adjusting seat forward and backward



Pull up the seat adjusting grip, move the seat back and forth to desired position, and release grip to adjust the seat position.

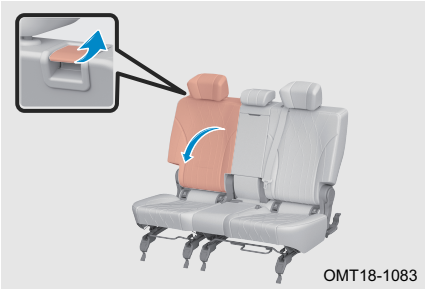
Adjusting seatback



Pull the seatback adjustment lever upwards, adjust the seatback to desired angle, and release the lever to adjust the seatback angle.

Pull seatback adjustment lever upward, and slowly lower the seatback with your hand, then seatback can be folded.

Seat easy entry



Pull up EASY ENTRY operation handle at upper part of seatback, fold the second row seatback and slide the second row seat to foremost position to easy access to third row seat.

After entering and leaving the third row seat, slide the second row seat to rearmost position and pull the seatback backward until it is locked, accompanied by a click sound. Shake the seat forward and backward, apply force backward against the seatback to make sure that the seat is locked properly.

READ
When folding seatback, make sure that outer seat belt passes around the seatback to avoid damaging the belt.

WARNING
Do not adjust seat while driving, otherwise it may cause accidents and personal injury.

The total adjustable front and rear stroke is 120 mm (it can be adjusted 120 mm forward, 40 mm backward); Seatback angle can be adjusted 30 degrees forward, 12 degrees backward; The height can not be adjusted.

Third Row Manual Seat



Pull seatback adjustment lever upward, and slowly lower the seatback with your hand, then seatback can be folded.

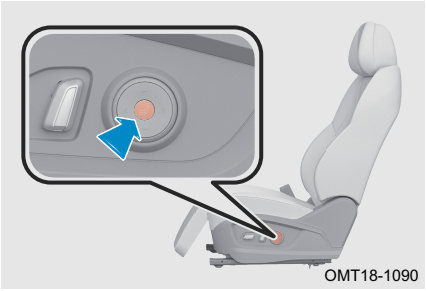
READ
When folding seatback, make sure that outer seat belt passes around the seatback to avoid damaging the belt.

⚠ WARNING
Do not adjust seat while driving, otherwise it may cause accidents and personal injury.

The seat can not be adjusted forward and backward; Seatback angle can be adjusted 6 degrees forward, 4 degrees backward; The height can not be adjusted.

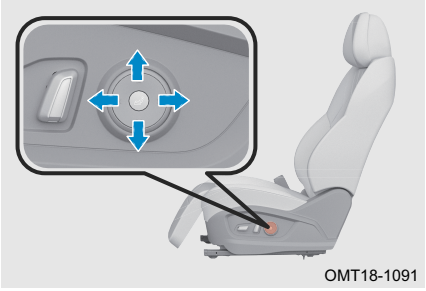
Front Passenger Seat Massage Function (If Equipped)

Front passenger seat has a massage function with 3 massage intensities (low/medium/high) and 5 massage modes (wave/catwalk/cross/ease/jump), which can effectively relieve the back fatigue during long distance driving.


OMT18-1090

When the vehicle is powered on, press the massage function switch, the audio system pops up the seat control screen while the massage function is turned on.

The massage function will automatically shut off after operating for about 15 minutes.

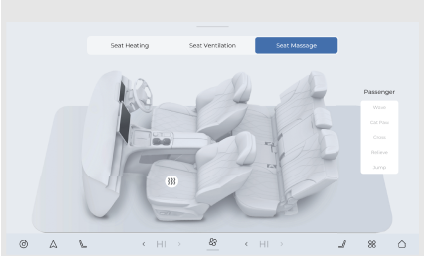

OMT18-1091

Shortly press " ⬆ " button once to adjust one massage mode forwards at a time.

Shortly press " ⬇ " button once to adjust one massage mode backwards at a time.

Shortly press " ⬅ " button once to increase one massage intensity at a time.

Shortly press " ➡ " button once to reduce one massage intensity at a time.



OMT18-1094

With vehicle in READY state, click the " " button through Audio System - Seat Control Screen - Seat Massage to adjust the massage intensity and manually select the massage mode.

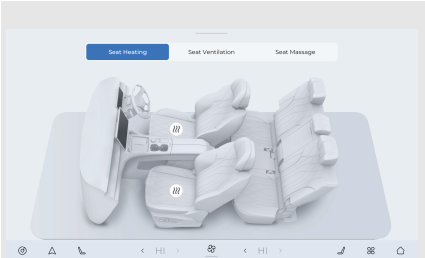
READ

The front passenger massage seat is not standard. Please refer to the actual vehicle.

CAUTION

When the vehicle is driving, it is forbidden to lie on the seat, otherwise the seat belt and airbag cannot play a protective role.

Seat Heating Function (If Equipped)



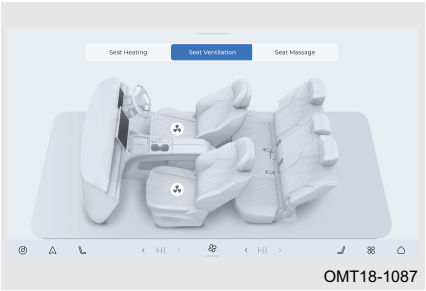
OMT18-1086

After vehicle starts, click " " button through Audio System - Seat Control Screen - Seat Heating to turn on the seat heating function and switch among level 3/level 2/level 1/ OFF circularly.

READ

Seat heating and seat ventilation cannot be turned on simultaneously.

Seat Ventilation Function (If Equipped)



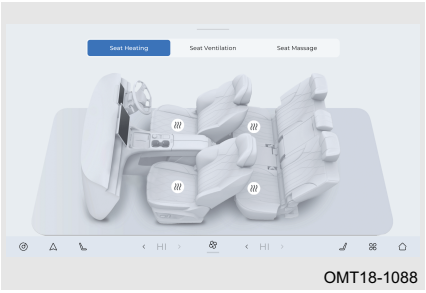
OMT18-1087

After vehicle starts, click " " button through Audio System - Seat Control Screen - Seat Ventilation to turn on the seat ventilation function and switch among level 3/level 2/ level 1/OFF circularly.

READ

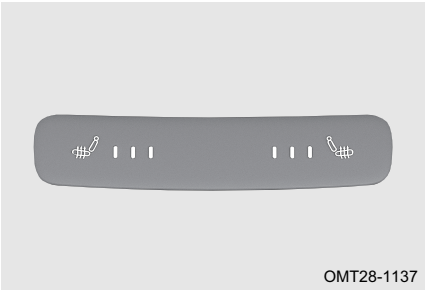
Seat heating and seat ventilation cannot be turned on simultaneously.

Second Row Seat Heating (If Equipped)



OMT18-1088

Method 1: After starting the vehicle, click second row seat heating button by air conditioning display screen - seat - heating, it is 3-level heating (3 indicators on). Each time the switch is clicked, the heating level is lowered one level. Click it the fourth time to turn off the seat heating.

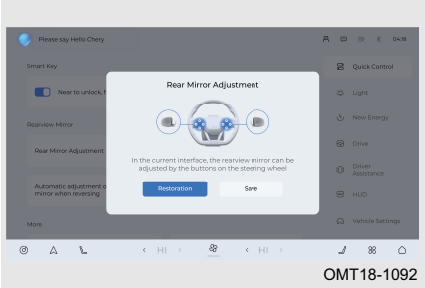

OMT28-1137

Method 2: After starting the vehicle, press the second row seat heating button, it is 3-level heating (3 indicators on). Each time the switch is pressed, the heating level is reduced by one level. Press it the fourth time to turn off the seat heating.

READ

Seat heating and seat ventilation cannot be turned on simultaneously.

Driver Seat Memory Function (If Equipped)



OMT18-1092

When the vehicle is powered on, after adjusting the seat position, the audio system will pop up the seat memory screen to restore/save and update the memory position according to your needs.

When the vehicle is powered on, it can restore/save and update the memory position according to your needs through Audio System - Settings - Quick Control - Rear Mirror Adjustment.

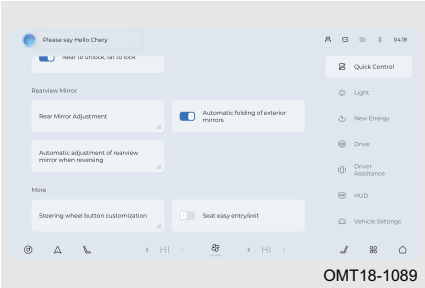
READ

Seat and outside rear view mirror memory are saved and recalled at the same time.

WARNING

When seat memory function turns on, please ensure that nobody is caught. If so, move the seat adjustment button to stop operation of seats. Do not leave children alone in vehicle. Otherwise, they may be caught due to seat memory function.

Easy Seat Access/Exit Function (If Equipped)



OMT18-1089

When the vehicle is powered on, turn on Seat easy entry/exit through Audio System - Settings - Quick Control.

Switch vehicle power from ON to OFF mode and open driver door, driver seat automatically moves backward a certain distance so that driver can get off conveniently.

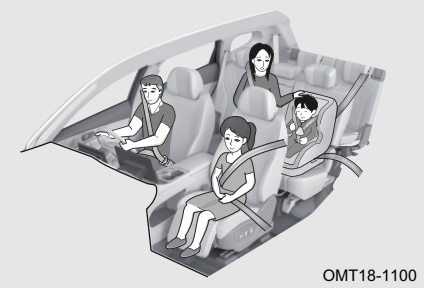
Switch vehicle power from OFF to ACC/ON mode, the driver seat moves forwards a certain distance automatically for easy starting off.

⚠ WARNING

- During engine starting, the current of the vehicle is too large, and seat adjustment is not allowed. This function cannot operate properly when the vehicle power is in the OFF mode and the vehicle is started directly.
- When easy seat access/exit function turns on, please ensure that nobody is caught. If so, move the seat adjustment button to stop operation of seats. Do not leave children alone in vehicle. Otherwise, they may be caught due to easy seat access function.

2-7. Seat Belt

Seat Belt


OMT18-1100

We strongly recommend the driver and passengers to wear their seat belts correctly at all times. Failure to do so could increase possibility and severity of injury in case of an accident. Check the seat belt regularly. If any seat belt function failure is found, please contact the authorized service centre for inspection and repair immediately.

Seat belt indicator

Front seat belt is not buckled or not fastened firmly: When vehicle speed is less than 15 mph (25 km/h), red indicator " " in instrument cluster flashes; When vehicle speed is not less than 15 mph (25 km/h), red indicator " " in instrument cluster flashes, accompanied by sound alarm.

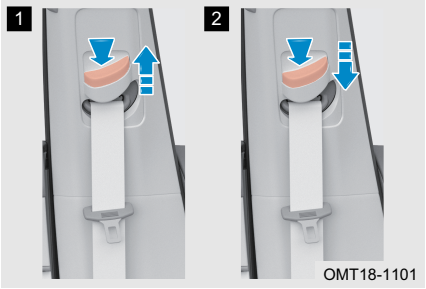
If the rear seat belt is not buckled or fastened firmly: When vehicle speed is 15 mph (25 km/h) or more, the indicator "" in instrument cluster flashes for a few seconds and then remains on, accompanied by sound alarm.

Third row seat belt : When vehicle speed is not less than 10 mph (10 km/h), the third row seat belt is not fastened or not properly fastened, red indicator "" on instrument cluster remains on for 60 seconds and then goes off.

Note: the red indicator light turns on when the corresponding rear seat belt is not fastened, and turns off when the corresponding rear seat belt is fastened.

Using seat belt correctly

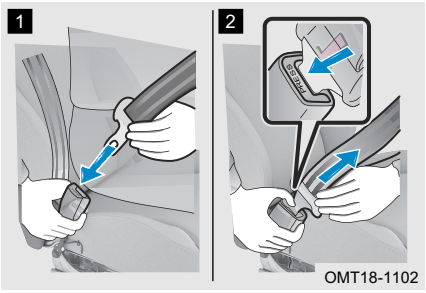
Step 1: Adjust the height of front seat belts;



1 Adjust upward: Directly push the seat belt adjustment button upwards.

2 Adjust downward: Push seat belt adjuster downward while pressing adjusting button.

Step 2: Fasten/release seat belt;



1 Fasten seat belt: Push the tab into the buckle until a "click" sound is heard.

2 Release seat belt: Press the release button to retract seat belt. If the belt cannot retract smoothly, pull it out and check for kinks or twists. Make sure that seat belt can retract smoothly.

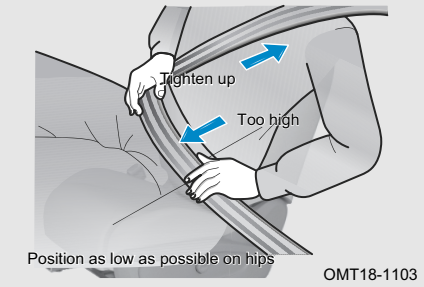
READ

- The seat belt will lock when the vehicle is on a slope.
- The seat belt will lock when it is pulled out quickly, but IT will not lock when pulling it out slowly.
- Each seat belt shall be used by one person only. Do not use a seat belt for more than one person at one time, including children.
- Only front seat belt can perform height adjustment. The usage method of the second row seat belts is same as the front seat belt. For the specific buckle position, please refer to your own vehicle.

CAUTION

- Make sure that seat belt buckle position is correct and is locked safely, otherwise it may cause personal injuries.
- Do not use any seat belt with a loose buckle, otherwise, the seat belt will not protect the passengers in the event of sudden braking or a collision.

Step 3: Adjust the position of seat belts.



To adjust the seatback angle, sit up straightly and well back in the seat. Position the lap belt as low as possible on your hips — not on your waist, then pull the shoulder belt upward so that it comes fully over the shoulder, but does not come into contact with the neck or slide off the shoulder.

⚠ CAUTION

- Avoid loose fitting clothes when driving. These can prevent the seatbelt fitting correctly and can affect the protection offered.
- Both high-positioned lap belts and loose-fitting belts could cause death or serious injuries during a collision or other unintended events.
- Do not recline seat more than necessary to achieve a comfortable ride. Seat belts are most effective when the back of the passenger and the seat keep a complete fit.
- Make sure the shoulder belt is positioned across your shoulder. Do not place the shoulder belt under your arm. The belt should be kept away from your neck, but not falling off your shoulder. Failure to do so could reduce the protection effect of seat belt in an accident.
- We recommend that children be seated in the second row seat. Use child restraint system with ISOFIX function according to the child's height. Always use standard fixing device for child restraint system on second row seat.

Maintaining seat belt



Check seat belts regularly for cuts, fraying, loose and stretched belt (-such as after a traffic accident). If the belt is damaged, please contact authorized service centre for inspection and repair immediately.

⚠ CAUTION

- Do not allow water to penetrate belt retractor or buckle mechanism.
- Do not use chemical detergent, boiling water, bleach or dye to wash the seat belt.
- The seat belt should be washed with mild cleanser or warm water and dry naturally. Never clean it with artificial heat.
- Do not try to repair or lubricate retractor or buckle mechanism of seat belt, or repair seat belt in any way, it may damage the vehicle and cause personal injury.

⚠ WARNING

- If your vehicle has been involved in a serious accident and even if seat belt is not obviously damaged, please contact the authorized service centre for inspection and replace.
- Ensure that the belt can function properly and the belt is not twisted. If the seat belt does not function properly, please contact the authorized service centre for inspection and repair immediately.
- Do not attempt to install, remove, modify, disassemble or dispose of the seat belts. If there is any need above, have any necessary service carried out by authorized service centre.

Seat belt precautions

■ Precautions for using seat belt by a child

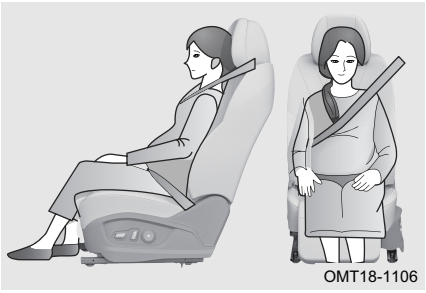
The seat belts of your vehicle are principally designed for persons of adult size. Use a child restraint system appropriate for the child, until the child becomes large enough to properly wear the vehicle seat belt. When the child becomes large enough to properly wear the vehicle seat belt, follow the instructions regarding seat belt usage. If a child is too large to use a child restraint system, the child should sit in the second row seat and must be restrained using the vehicle seat belt.


OMT18-1105

Make sure the shoulder belt is positioned across the center of child's shoulder. The belt should be kept away from child's neck, but not falling off child's shoulder. Otherwise, the child may be seriously injured or even death during a collision or other unintended events.

Failure to use a child restraint system (for example: Let a child stand or kneel on seats; Let a child sit on an adult's laps; Holding a child in arms). This may cause death or serious injuries during a collision or other unintended events.

■ Precautions for using seat belt by a pregnant woman

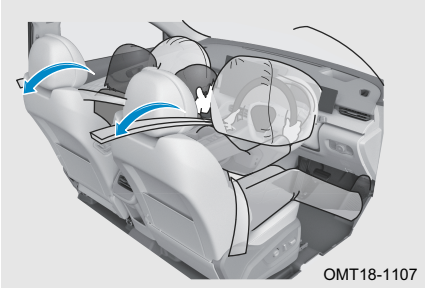

OMT18-1106

Obtain medical advice and wear the seat belt properly. Women who are pregnant should position the lap belt as low as possible over the hips in the same manner as other occupants. Extend the shoulder belt completely over the shoulder and across the chest, avoid belt contact with the rounding of the abdominal area. If the seat belt is not worn properly, it may cause serious injuries or death during a collision or other unintended events.

⚠ WARNING

- Do not insert coins, clips, etc. into the buckle to prevent from properly latching tab and buckle.
- After inserting the tab, make sure that the tab and buckle are locked and that the lap belt and shoulder belt are not twisted.
- It is not allowed to insert the non-genuine seat belt tab into buckle. Long-term use will easily lead to damage of the seat belt buckle and make it unusable.
- If the seat belt does not function normally, please contact authorized service centre immediately. During this period, please do not use the corresponding seat belt.

Seat Belt Pretensioner (If Equipped)



1. Seat belt pretensioner is designed to assist front airbag in the event of a severe impact.
2. In the event of a minor impact or side impact, pretensioner may not activate.
3. During a severe impact, seat belt pretensioner may be activated even if there is no occupant in front seat.
4. When seat belt pretensioner is activated, retractor quickly tightens seat belt to tightly restrain occupant.
5. When seat belt pretensioner is activated, it may make a working sound and release a small amount of non-toxic gas. The produced gas does not cause a fire and is generally harmless.

⚠ WARNING

- When seat belt pretensioner is activated, the airbag malfunction indicator remains on, and seat belts cannot be retracted / pulled out. Please contact the authorized service centre for inspection and repair immediately.
- Do not modify, remove, hit or open the seat belt pretensioner assembly, airbag sensor and assembly wire. Otherwise, it may cause death or serious injuries during a collision or other unintended events.

Function limit

■ In the following cases, the seat belt pretensioner may not work properly:

1. Modify suspension system.
2. Modify front body section.
3. Repair the seat belt pretensioner or any assembly nearby.
4. Seat belt pretensioner assembly or its surrounding area is damaged.
5. Install grill guard or any other device to front body.

2-8. Child Restraint System

Child Restraint System

According to accident statistics, a child is safer sitting in the second row seat and properly restrained than child in front seat. Choose a child restraint system suitable for the vehicle, age and size of the child. (Vehicle seat belt meet international standards is designed according to body size of child over 1.5 m. If any under 1.5 m uses seat belt, the belt could hurt his/her neck seriously in case of an accident).

This instruction only provides installation instructions for child restraint systems (ISOFIX). For installation details, strictly follow the instructions provided by the child restraint system manufacturer.

⚠ WARNING

- We suggest use standard fixing device for child restraint system on the second row seat.
- Child restraint system should comply with the safety standards set by local regulations and laws. We will take no responsibility for an accident caused by using a child restraint system.
- For effective protection in accidents and sudden stops, a child must be properly restrained using a seat belt or a appropriate child restraint system installed on the second row seat depending on age and size of the child. Holding a child in the arms is not a substitute for a child restraint system.

Child Safety Seat Grouping

Child restraint systems should comply with local motor vehicle standards for child restraint systems and child safety prevention system (ECE R44/R129), generally, the verified child restraint system is applied a local certification label and also has an orange label after testing by ECE R44/R129 standard. There is information, such as weight group, ISOFIX level and license for child restraint system, on this label.

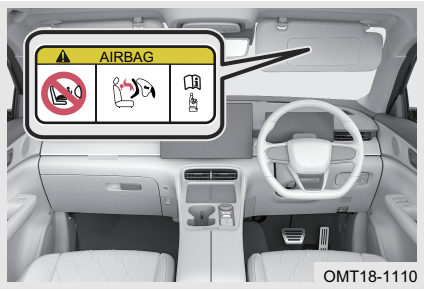
CRS Table

Seat position	Driver	Front Passenger		2nd row left	2nd row middle	2nd row right	3rd row left	3rd row right
		Pass-enger Airbag ON	Pass-enger Airbag OFF					
Seating position suitable for universal belted (YES/NO)	N/A	NO	YES	YES	YES	YES	YES	YES
i-Size seating position (YES/NO)	N/A	NO	NO	YES	NO	YES	NO	NO
Seating position suitable for lateral fixture (L1/ L2)	N/A	NO	NO	NO	NO	NO	NO	NO
Largest suitable rearwardf-acing fixture (R1/ R2X/ R2/ R3)	N/A	NO	NO	R1/ R2X/ R2/R3	NO	R1/ R2X/ R2/R3	NO	NO
Largest suitable forward facing fixture (F2X /F2/ F3)	N/A	NO	NO	F2X/ F2/F3	NO	F2X/ F2/F3	NO	NO
Largest suitable booster fixture (B2/ B3)	N/A	NO	NO	B2/B3	NO	B2/B3	NO	NO

Note:

1. The child seat category is defined according to ECE R16/R44/R129, you can find the category of child seat on it's specification. The child restraint system must be appropriate to the age, weight and size of the child.
2. If it is absolutely necessary for you to install a child seat to the front passenger seat, be sure to turn passenger airbag off. Adjust front passenger seat to the highest and rearmost position before installing universal CRS on it. and please adjust the front passenger seat back to an upright position.
3. It is forbidden to install a child seat with a support base or with a support leg on the middle seat of the 2nd row.
4. Only universal belted child restraint systems can be used on the middle seat of the 2nd row.

Child restraint system precautions



This sticker is attached to front passenger sun visor and used to remind you that the vehicle is equipped with front airbag (SRS). Observe the following precautions:

- When using a rearward facing child restraint system in the front passenger seat, the passenger airbag must be OFF, Refer to "- Enabling and Disabling Front Passenger Airbag".
- Never change the design of child restraint system fixing device or seat belt on the vehicle under any circumstances.

It is the driver's responsibility to comply to the instructions provided, and to the instructions provided by the CRS manufacturer.

Recommended Child Restraint Systems

- Only use child restraints approved to either ECE R44 or ECE R129. Refer to the approval reference attached to the child restraint system.
- When using child restraint systems, please carefully read the instructions provided by the child restraint system manufacturer and strictly follow the installation instructions, to ensure the child restraint system is installed correctly.
- We recommends the following child restraint systems.

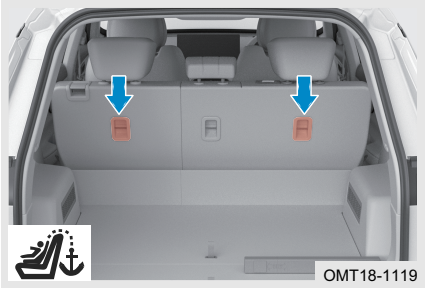
Child Height/ Mass Group	Name	Manufacturer	Type Of Fixation
40～83cm	Baby-Safe 2 i-Size CRS with i-Size Base	Britax Römer	ISOFIX with Support Leg (-Rearward Facing)
76～105cm	TRIFIX² i-Size	Britax Römer	ISOFIX and TOP TETHER
Group II (15 to 25 kg)	KidFix i-Size	Britax Römer	ISOFIX and vehicle belt
Group III (22 to 36 kg)	KidFix i-Size booster	Britax Römer	ISOFIX and vehicle belt

Note:

When using Britax Römer KidFix:

- Install the SICT side impact extension as per the CRS manual instruction;
- Insert the vehicle lap belt into the Secure Guard. Do not place the vehicle diagonal belt into the Secure Guard.

Top Tether



This model is equipped with top tether strap anchorages on the back of the rear seats.

Before using a top tether strap, remove the seating position head restraint and luggage compartment cover. With the child restraint on the seat, attach the top tether strap to the anchorage, and tighten to remove all slack. Refer to instructions provided by the CRS manufacturer.

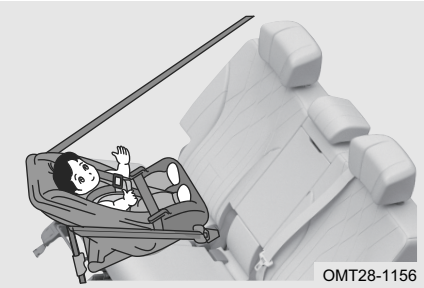
READ

- Ensure all removed head restraints are stowed safely.
- After correct installation of the child restraint and top tether, the luggage compartment cover can be re-installed.

⚠ WARNING

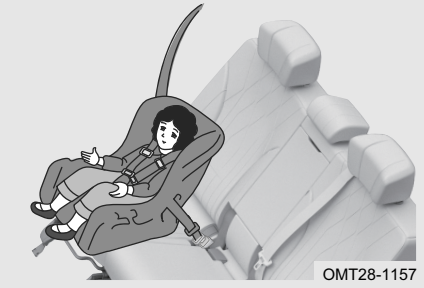
Ensure the top tether strap anchor is attached correctly. Incorrect installation may cause serious injury to the child.

■ Rearward-facing child restraint system


OMT28-1156

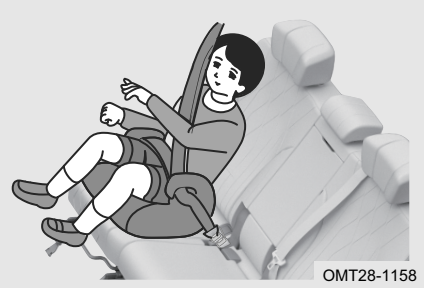
A rearward facing child restraint is installed to face to the rear of the vehicle. Only install a rearward facing child restraint on the front passenger seat if the airbag is OFF. It is recommended children use a rearward facing child restraint system up to 4 years old.

■ Forward-facing child restraint system


OMT28-1157

A forward facing child restraint is installed to face to the front of the vehicle. It is recommended children use a forward facing child restraint system when older than 4 years old.

■ Booster seat child restraint system


OMT28-1158

For larger children that cannot fit in a child restraint system with a high back, they may occupy a second row outboard seat using a booster seat, either attached to the lower anchorage points or belted, as described in the instructions provided by the child restraint system manufacturer.

Installing Child Restraint System

Child restraint system



OMT18-1111

The rear outside seats are equipped with ISOFIX / i-Size anchorages. The anchorage locations are identified by a marking (see illustration) located on the seat back, directly above the associated anchorages.

Installing child restraint system



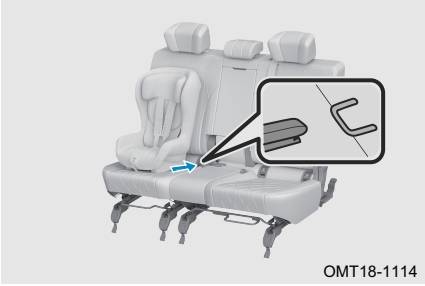
OMT18-1111

Step 1: Locate the ISOFIX anchorage; Please adjust the front and rear travel of the second row seat to the last position.



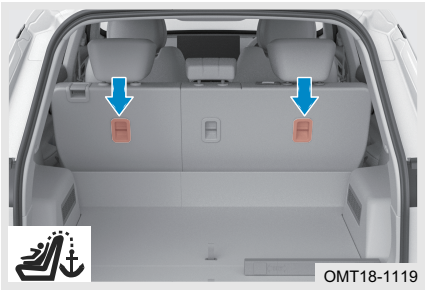
OMT18-1113

Step 2: Turn up the plastic cover to access the anchorages;


OMT18-1114

Step 3: Place the child restraint system on the rear outboard seat;

Step 4: Attach the child restraint ISOFIX probe to the anchorage. Where necessary extend the child restraint support leg.



Step 5: Where a top tether strap is required, route, correctly attach and tighten the top tether strap to the top tether anchorage.

Note: If a luggage cover is present, it will need to be removed, to allow the upper tether access to the anchor point.

Note: Refer to the child restraint system instructions whether it needs to be secured by an upper tether belt.

READ

- If it interferes with the installation, the head restraint can be removed from the seat the child restraint system is installed on.
- After attaching the upper tether to the anchor point, be sure to tighten the tether and ensure it is secure. For the specific method of fixing and tightening upper tether of the child restraint system, strictly follow the instructions provided by the child restraint system manufacturer.
- Before installing the child restraint system that uses an upper tether, the head restraint must first be removed. This will limit or prevent interaction of the head restraint with the upper tether. In addition, any luggage cover present must first be removed.

⚠ WARNING

- After installing a child restraint system, never adjust the seat.
- It is recommended child restraint systems are installed on the rear outboard seats.
- Never fix more than one child restraint system to one set of anchor points.
- Do not allow the upper tether to cross or pass the head restraint and be sure to tighten the tether after installing. Incorrect installation may cause serious injury to children.
- For the vehicle equipped with a luggage cover on the luggage compartment, the luggage cover must be removed before installing child restraint system to anchor points.
- If anchor point device is damaged or overloaded during an accident, please go to authorized service centre for inspection and repair immediately.
- If the driver's seat interferes with the correct installation of the child restraint system on the rear seat behind the driver seat, install the child restraint system on the rear seat behind the front passenger.
- Do not use child restraint system anchor bracket to secure items other than child restraint system. We will not be liable for any accident caused this way.
- If the child restraint system is not correctly fixed in place, the child or passengers may face serious injury or even death during a collision.
- Make sure the top tether is securely latched, and check if the child restraint system is secured by pushing and pulling it in different directions. Follow the installation instructions provided by the child restraint system manufacturer. If the child restraint system is not correctly installed, the child may face serious injury or even death during a collision.

Enabling and Disabling Front Passenger Airbag (If Equipped)



OMT28-1159

The airbag enabling/disabling switch is located on the passenger side instrument panel and is visible when front passenger door is opened.

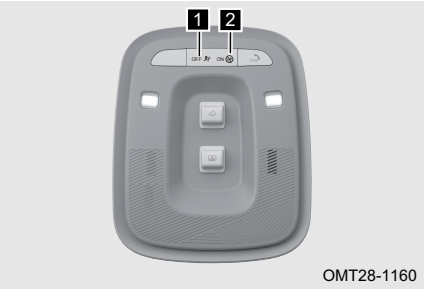
■ Disabling front passenger airbag

Turn the switch to OFF position while pulling the switch outward, the front passenger airbag is disabled and the disabling status indicator will come on.

■ Enabling front passenger airbag

Turn the switch from OFF to ON, re-enable the front passenger airbag and the enabling status indicator will come on. It is now safe to sit in the front passenger seat.

Airbag status indicator



1 Disabling status indication

2 Enabling status indication

⚠ WARNING

- Remember to subsequently enable the front passenger airbag when an adult occupant is seated in the front passenger seat. It is the driver's responsibility to confirm the passenger airbag status is correct for the occupant in the front passenger seat.
- In the event a rearward facing child restraint system needs to be installed on the front passenger seat, the front passenger airbag must be disabled. Otherwise, it may cause serious injury or even death to young children in the event of an accident.

Reminder for Children Staying in Rear Seat (If Equipped)

Introduction

This function is based on the active detection of millimeter wave radar .After the vehicle is powered off and locked, it detects whether there is a child in the car. If there is child, the system alarms to alert customers and pedestrians around the vehicle. The alarm is alerted by a double flash and a siren.

After locking the car, the system will immediately begin to determine whether there is a child in the car. If a child is detected, an initial alert will be sent ten seconds after locking the car, and the whole process will last five seconds or until canceled.

After the end of the initial reminder, if the door is still closed and the system detects that there are still children in the car, the upgrade reminder will be activated at 85 seconds after the end of the initial reminder; The upgrade reminder signal takes every 60 seconds as a reminder cycle. Within a cycle, the signal of yellow double flashing light and siren lasts for 30 seconds, and then pauses for 30 seconds in this cycle. Repeat until the reminder is cancelled

When the first upgrade reminder is triggered for more than 5 minutes and a child is detected in the car, a three-level reminder will be triggered, and your CAR APP or mobile phone SMS will receive a child forget reminder, which is as follows: "Dear user, it is detected people and pets left in your car. Please return to your car promptly".

Temporary system suspension

The system allows temporary suspension. IN the Vehicle comfort menu inside the vehicle center, there is a temporary off switch for this feature. Turn off the reminding function once through this switch when there is no need to remind temporarily. However, when the vehicle starts and drives next time, the switch will return to "ON" state by default.

READ
Please do not leave children alone in the car.

3-1. Key Information
Smart Key 75
Effective Range 78
Keyless Entry 79
Vehicle Arming..... 81
Immobilizer System 83
Smart Key Vehicle Locating..... 83
Remote Starting for Smart Key..... 84

3-2. Doors
Door Unlocking/Locking 84
Door Mechanical Switch..... 86
Child Lock..... 87

3-3. Windows
Power Windows..... 87
Window Remote Control Function 89
Window Jam Protection Function 90

3-4. Panoramic Moon Roof
Panoramic Moon Roof (If Equipped) 91
Moon Roof Remote Control Function 93
Moon Roof Jam Protection Function 94

3-5. Audio System
Audio View..... 96
Control Center 97
Setting..... 97
Audio Button..... 101
Voice Recognition Function 102
Phone-link..... 102

3-6. Air Conditioning System
Front A/C 105
A/C Setting..... 106
Air Conditioning Operation..... 106
Air Conditioning Heating.... 110
A/C Cooling..... 110
Intelligent Mode (If Equipped) 112
Constant Temperature Cabin Function (If Equipped) 112
Refrigeration/Warming Function of Armrest Box.... 113
Air Outlets Airflow Control 113

3-7. Fragrance System (If Equipped)
Fragrance System (If Equipped) 114
Fragrance Installation Instructions 115
Replacing Fragrance 115

3-8. Wireless Charging (If Equipped)
Wireless Charging (CWC) (If Equipped)..... 116

3-9. OTA Upgrade (If Equipped)
OTA Upgrade (If Equipped) 120

Method for Entering Vehicle Upgrade 120
Introduction of Upgrade Mode..... 121
Upgrade Process Operation..... 122
Countermeasures for Abnormal Problems during Upgrading 130

3-10.Remote Control System (if equipped)

Remote Control System (if equipped)..... 131
Introduction 131
Operation environment 131
Introduction of Product Functions..... 131
Vehicle binding and vehicle control activation ... 131
View vehicle status..... 132
Remote vehicle control..... 132
Remote A/C ON..... 133
Energy Cnter..... 134
Tyre Monitoring..... 134
Map service..... 134
Binding authorization 135
Account cancellation..... 136

3-11.Storage Space

Storage Space..... 137

3-12.USB Port

Front USB..... 140
Rear USB 140

3-13.Backup Power Supply (12 V)

Rear Backup Power Supply..... 140

3-14.Sun Visors and Vanity Mirrors

Sun Visors and Vanity Mirrors..... 141

3-15.Front Compartment Cover

Opening/Closing Front Compartment Cover 141

3-16.Back Door

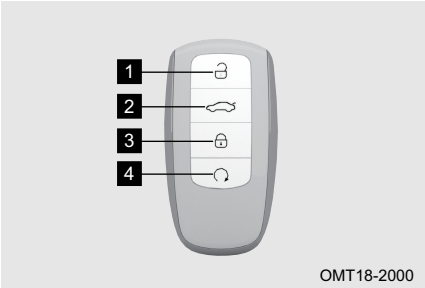
Manual Back Door..... 142
Power Back Door (If Equipped)..... 142
Back Door Emergency Opening..... 146

3-17.Fuel Tank Cap

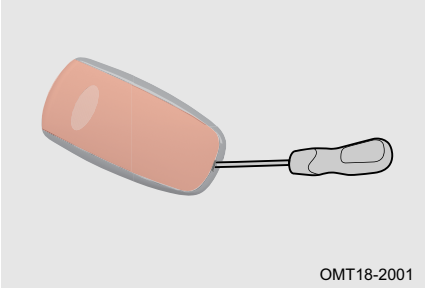
3-1. Key Information

Smart Key

Smart key is used to remotely lock/unlock doors and open back door within about 20 m (no blind spot and magnetic interference) of the vehicle (varies depending on the configuration of vehicle models).



1 Unlock button
2 Back door opener button
3 Lock button
4 Remote starting button



The mechanical key built into the smart key can be used to lock/unlock doors in emergency after prying off smart key cover using a flathead screwdriver with its tip wrapped with tape and taking out mechanical key. After use, return it to original place for easy-to-carry.

Function limit

If any of the following conditions occurs, the smart key battery may be low or depleted:

1. The remote control distance gradually decreases.
2. Remote control function does not work even there is no interference.
3. Instrument cluster prompts "Smart key battery is low".

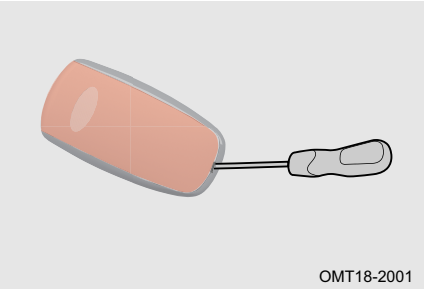
■ In the following conditions, the smart key may not work properly:

1. There are more than one smart keys being used nearby.
2. The distance between vehicle and smart key is over 20 m.
3. The smart key is in contact with, or is covered by a metallic object.
4. The smart key is placed near an electrical appliance (such as mobile phone or personal computer).
5. The key is near wireless communication devices that have the similar frequency with the remote control key (such as portable radio).

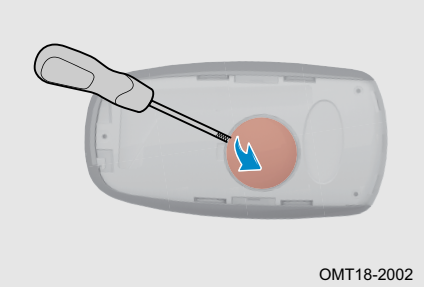
6. The key is near facilities that generate strong radio waves (such as TV tower, radio station, power station, airport, train station).

⚠ CAUTION
• This product is a low frequency radio device and can be interfered by various radio services or radiation from industrial, scientific and medical equipment. • Do not change the transmitting frequency, increase the transmitter power (-including installation of the wireless RF power amplifier), or install an external or other transmitting antenna without permission. • In the process of normal use of the vehicle, do not place the smart key on the wireless charging tray, so that vehicle may identify the smart key. • When using the product, do not interfere with legal wireless communications; In case of interference, immediately stop using and take measures to eliminate the interference before continuing to use it.

Replacing smart key battery


OMT18-2001

Step 1: Pry off smart key cover using a flathead screwdriver with the tip taped and take out mechanical key;


OMT18-2002

Step 2: Pry off battery in smart key using a flathead screwdriver with the tip taped and install new battery with the positive (+) side up;

Step 3: Install smart key in place in the reverse order of removal;

Step 4: After replacing the battery, check if the smart key operates properly. If the smart key still does not function correctly, please contact authorized service centre for inspection and repair as soon as possible.

ENVIRONMENTAL PROTECTION

Used lithium battery cannot be handled as general household rubbish, please handle used battery according to the local regulations and provisions regarding environmental protection.

READ

- Make sure that positive and negative terminals of battery are placed correctly.
- Smart key battery model: 3V-CR2032 lithium battery.

CAUTION

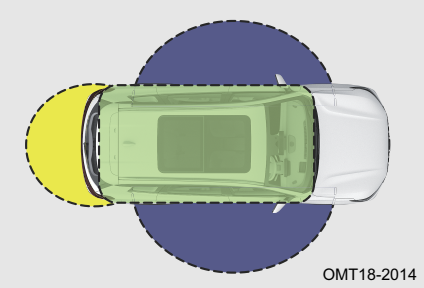
- Only use the battery model recommended.
- Do not bend electrode and terminal when installing battery.
- Make sure your hands are dry and keep away from water when replacing the battery.
- Do not touch new battery with oily hand. Failure to do so may cause battery corrosion.
- Do not touch or move any components inside the smart key, or its functions may not work properly.
- There are some difficulties when replacing battery, so it may be damaged if replacing the battery by yourself. It is recommended to replace it at authorized service station.

WARNING

Take special care to prevent children from swallowing the removed battery or other components, failure to do so may cause death or serious injury to the child.

Effective Range

Detectable area



Starting or switching power area

Start or switch power mode when smart key is inside the vehicle.

Unlocking/locking area

Unlock/lock the doors when smart key is within effective range of high performance low-frequency antenna of door.

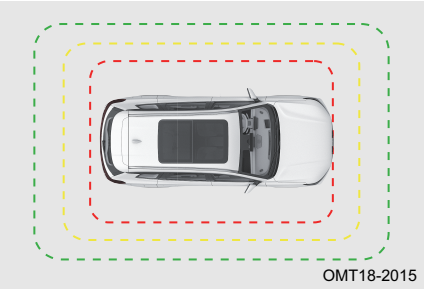
Opening back door area

Open the back door when smart key is within effective range of luggage compartment outside low-frequency antenna.

READ

Low-frequency antenna can detect areas within 1.5 m away from smart key. Therefore, when using keyless entry or one-button start function, ensure that distance between smart key and low-frequency antenna meets the requirement.

Automatic sensing area



Smart welcome lights ON area

Approach the vehicle while carrying smart key on your person, the welcome lights will turn on.

Away from locking area

Leave the vehicle while carrying smart key on your person, the doors will lock automatically.

Approaching to unlocking area

Approach the vehicle while carrying smart key on your person, the doors will unlock automatically.

READ

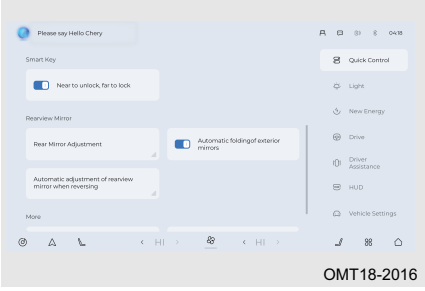
- Please leave the vehicle after the four doors, hood and back door are closed, otherwise, the automatic sensing lock function may not work properly.
- Functions such as keyless entry, welcome function, approach unlocking, away locking etc. may be affected due to the interference of surrounding environment while carrying smart key on your person. When the functions are abnormal, please change to other methods (such as manual unlocking, remote unlocking) to unlock/lock or start the vehicle.

Function limit

■ Smart key may not be detected in the following conditions:

1. Smart key is in luggage compartment.
2. When locking doors, smart key is too close to the window or roof.
3. Check if the smart key is placed together with strong electromagnetic interference sources (such as portable power source, interphone or other phones).

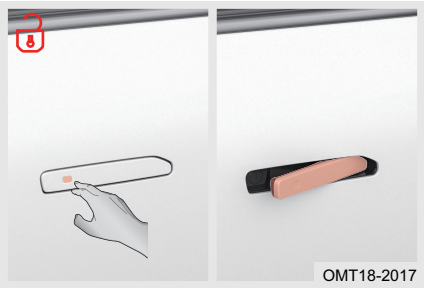
Keyless Entry



OMT18-2016

When the vehicle is powered on, and turn on Near to unlock, far to lock through Audio System - Settings - Quick Control.

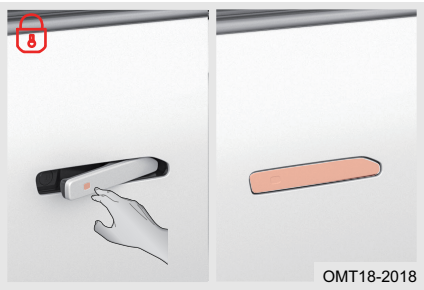
Unlocking doors



Method 1: Touch the hidden door handle sensing area while carrying smart key on your person, system automatically recognizes the validity of smart key and doors are unlocked automatically (hidden door handle extends automatically).

Method 2: Approach the vehicle while carrying smart key on your person, welcome lights turn on, system automatically recognizes the validity of smart key and doors are unlocked automatically (hidden door handle extends automatically).

Locking doors



Method 1: Touch the hidden door handle sensing area while carrying smart key on your person, system automatically recognizes the validity of smart key and doors are locked automatically (hidden door handle retracts automatically).

Method 2: Leave vehicle while carrying smart key on your person, system automatically recognizes the validity of smart key and doors are locked automatically (hidden door handle retracts automatically).

READ

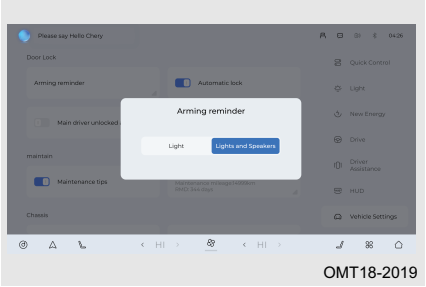
- Approach unlocking/away locking function will be turned off after 3 days since vehicle is locked. Restarting the vehicle will resume the approach unlocking/away locking function.
- When using the vehicle in winter, if the door handle is frozen and cannot be extended, use a card to remove the ice layer between the handle and the sheet metal gap, at the same time, you can use the bottom of your fist to tap the door handle slightly, and increase the hitting strength as needed until the ice is completely removed. Once the door handle can be extended, open and close the door several times. Make sure that the door handle returns to its original position before entering the vehicle. Never hit the vehicle with excessive force to avoid dents, and hit the handle gently.

⚠ CAUTION

- Do not put smart key next to computer, cordless mouse, phone, etc., otherwise, failing to sense lock/unlock may be caused.
- Sensing lock function can be operated only when vehicle power is switched to OFF mode, four doors, hood and back door are closed and smart key is not stored in vehicle.
- After leaving the vehicle and closing four doors, hood and back door, if smart key is left in vehicle or there is no smart key around vehicle within approximately 2.5 m, smart key sensing active lock function will not be activated.
- If smart key is brought outside the range of approximately 2.5 m of the vehicle and turn signal lights do not flash and horn does not sound (-successful arming prompt), inspect if the vehicle is locked to avoid locking failure caused by misoperation or unsatisfied condition.
- After sensing unlocking/locking function is activated, if smart key keeps near the vehicle for more than 3 minutes, the vehicle will lock automatically, if the key still does not leave after another 3 minutes, for the purpose of power saving, smart key sensing function will be temporarily turned off and can be activated only after opening any door, front compartment cover or back door and then closing four doors, hood and back door.

Vehicle Arming

Arming operation



OMT18-2019

When the vehicle is powered on, and set Arming reminder (Light/Lights and Speakers) through Audio System - Settings - Vehicle Settings.


OMT18-2020

■ Arming mode

Perform door locking operation with vehicle power switched to OFF mode, four doors, hood and back door closed, vehicle will enter arming mode.

Successful arming prompt: Turn signal lights flash once and anti-theft horn sounds once.

Arming failure prompt: Turn signal lights flash twice and anti-theft horn does not sound.

■ Secondary arming mode

After disarming, if four doors, hood and back door are not operated, the vehicle will be locked automatically and enter arming mode after 30 seconds. If any of the four doors, hood and back door is opened, the vehicle will exit secondary arming mode.

READ

- Vehicle arming cannot be set if vehicle power is not switched to OFF mode.
- If four doors are closed and hood and back door are not completely closed, the central lock locks once and vehicle anti-theft system is not armed successfully.
- If hood and back door are closed and any door is not closed, the central lock will lock and then unlock, and vehicle anti-theft system is not armed successfully.

Disarming operation


OMT18-2021

With vehicle in arming mode, perform vehicle unlocking operation and vehicle exits arming mode.

Successful disarming prompt: Turn signal lights flash twice.

Immobilizer System

Engine immobilizer system

Smart key has a built-in transponder chip. If the smart key is not pre-matched into engine anti-theft module, the built-in chip will stop engine from starting. In the following conditions, the engine immobilizer system may not work properly:

- Smart key is in contact with a metallic object.
- Do not modify or remove engine immobilizer system.
- Smart key is too close to or contacts smart key (key with a built-in transponder chip) of another vehicle.

CAUTION

- Do not match the smart key by yourself, otherwise the engine immobilizer system may not work properly.
- If the engine fails to start, but the starter works normally, it may be due to the interference of engine immobilizer system, please contact authorized service centre immediately for inspection and repair immediately.

Vehicle anti-theft system

With vehicle in arming mode and illegal entry is detected, the vehicle anti-theft system will send light alarm, alerting owner that the vehicle is in an illegal opening state.

READ

- The vehicle anti-theft system will not be enabled if the doors are locked by mechanical key. It is recommended to lock doors by smart key.
- After locking doors with smart key, the vehicle anti-theft system will be triggered if front left door is unlocked and opened by mechanical key.
- When vehicle anti-theft system is triggered, vehicle anti-theft system can be deactivated by pressing unlock button on smart key or switching if the vehicle power to ON mode.
- Before leaving the vehicle, check that nobody is in vehicle, all doors and windows are closed properly and vehicle is armed successfully to prevent unexpected triggering of vehicle anti-theft system or vehicle theft.

Smart Key Vehicle Locating

Press lock button on smart key twice continuously within several seconds, horn sounds 6 times, at the same time, turn signal lights flash 10 times, this allows you to find your vehicle easily.

Remote Starting for Smart Key

When vehicle is in arming mode and smart key is not in vehicle, long press lock button or remote starting button on the smart key for several seconds to start it remotely and A/C operates automatically at the same time. The vehicle will automatically shut off after 10 minutes of remote starting.

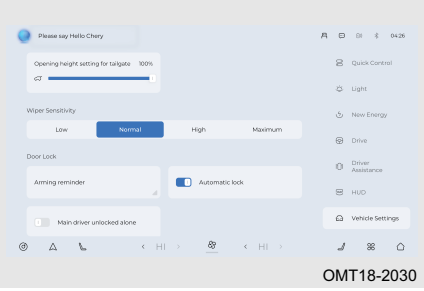
READ

- There must be no person in the vehicle including the operator when starting the vehicle remotely.
- Distance when starting vehicle remotely using smart key should not exceed normal operating distance of smart key (20 m).
- After vehicle is started remotely, some functions cannot be operated (such as headlight switch, wiper switch, audio function), depress brake pedal while carrying smart key on your person, exit remote mode to restore normal operation.
- During 10 minutes of single remote starting, if lock button or remote starting button is pressed again, the time will add 10 minutes; it allows vehicle to remotely start twice, if the two starting chances has been used up, turn the vehicle power to ON mode, and then perform remote starting again.

3-2. Doors

Door Unlocking/Locking

Independent driver door unlocking

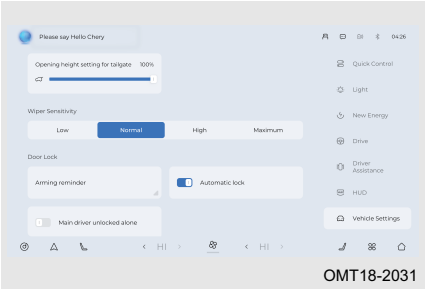


OMT18-2030

When the vehicle is powered on, turn on Unlock driver door only through Audio System - Settings - Vehicle Settings.

Only the driver door is unlocked when smart key unlock button is pressed for the first time. Other three doors are unlocked when smart key unlock button is pressed for the second time.

Automatic locking



OMT18-2031

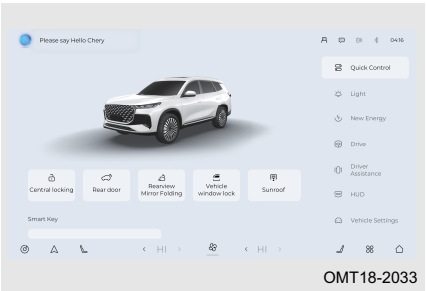
When the vehicle is powered on, turn on Automatic lock through Audio System - Settings - Vehicle Settings; Doors are automatically locked when the four doors, hood and back door are closed and vehicle speed is more than 9 mph (15 km/h).

Unlocking/locking doors



OMT18-2032

Press "" button to unlock the door; Press "" button to lock the door.



OMT18-2033

When the vehicle is powered on, click " " button through Audio System - Settings - Quick Control to unlock/lock doors.

Manual door unlocking



OMT18-2034

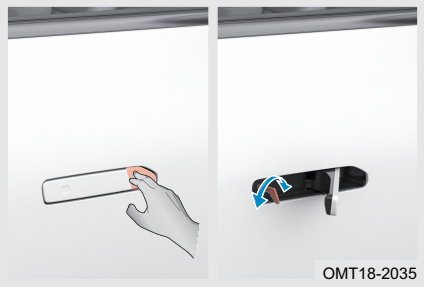
With vehicle in unlocked state, pull door inside handle directly to open doors.

With vehicle in locked state, pull door inside handle for the first time to unlock the doors, and pull it again to open the doors.

Door Mechanical Switch

Vehicle cannot be unlocked/locked electrically when battery is depleted or under similar conditions. In this case, the doors can be unlocked/locked with door mechanical switch.

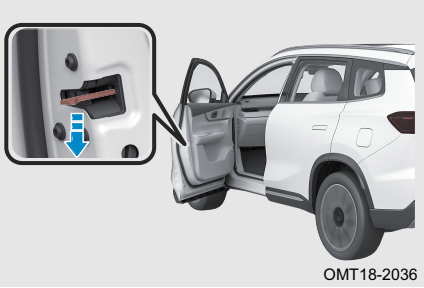
Locking/unlocking front right door manually



Step 1: Press and hold the front area of driver door outside handle to expand the hidden door handle;

Step 2: Pull the door handle, and insert the mechanical key into the key hole in the door outside handle, and rotate clockwise to lock the driver door and rotate counterclockwise to unlock the driver door.

Locking front left door/second row doors

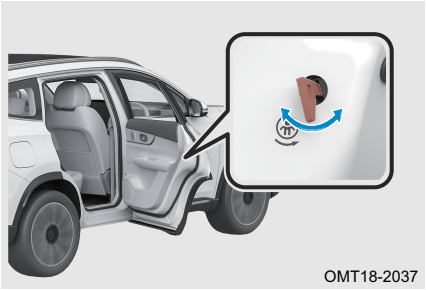


Open the door, insert the mechanical key into the lock cylinder, and move the lock button downwards to lock the door.

READ

- If the doors can not be unlocked/locked electrically, please go to authorized service centre for inspection and repair as soon as possible.
- When using door mechanical switch, please check if the doors are locked successfully one by one after locking. If unsuccessful, please contact authorized service centre as soon as possible.

Child Lock



The child lock is located on inside of second row doors.

Lock: Use mechanical key to turn in the direction of arrow to lock the child lock.

Unlock: Use mechanical key to turn in the opposite direction of arrow to unlock the child lock.

⚠ WARNING

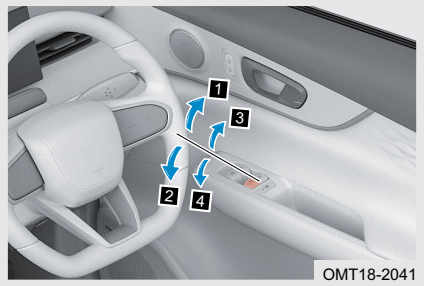
- The child lock is independent and cannot replace the central lock mechanism in any case.
- When a child is seated on the second row seats, always lock child locks to prevent the second row doors being opened accidentally while driving.
- After child lock is locked, in the event of a collision or other accident, if there is someone trapped inside vehicle and the second row door cannot be opened from the inside, please open it from outside the vehicle.
- In hot weather, if vehicle stalls and all doors and windows close, do not allow any animal or child in vehicle alone. Otherwise, serious injury or even death may be caused by the sharp temperature rise even if it is a short time.

3-3. Windows

Power Windows

There are many ways to open/close windows, such as by window switch, voice recognition and remote control.

Switch control



OMT18-2041

Automatic mode

1 Pull the switch to top to make window go up automatically; press it again to stop moving the window.

2 Press the switch to bottom to make window go down automatically; press it again to stop moving the window.

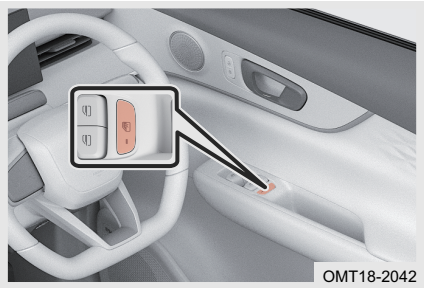
Mist mode

3 Pull the switch upwards by one level to make window go up; release the switch to stop moving the window.

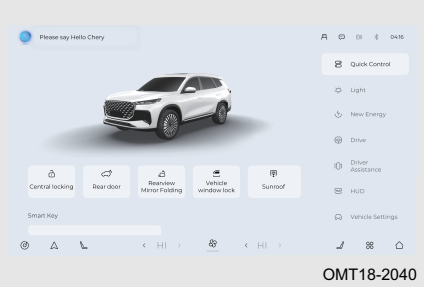
4 Press the switch downwards by one level to make window go down; release the switch to stop moving the window.

Passenger side window OFF function

When there is child in vehicle, it is recommended to turn on the passenger side window OFF function. After turning on this function, the passenger side window can only be operated through the driver side window switch.


OMT18-2042

Press " " switch to turn on/off the passenger side window OFF function.



OMT18-2040

When the vehicle is powered on, click " " button through Audio System - Settings - Quick Control to turn on/off passenger side window OFF function.

READ

- For details about voice recognition function, refer to "Audio System" section.
- Vehicles with window jam protection function have one-touch window up function.
- If front right / left door (exclude rear doors) is not opened within 2 minutes after vehicle power is switched to OFF mode, the power window can be operated.
- After leaving vehicle in low temperature environment for a long time, when operating power window switch, window glass cannot be fully opened or closed. In this case, release the switch and then operate it again, repeat this operation 3 - 5 cycles to resume.

WARNING

- Do not leave children alone in vehicle. If accidental operation of window switch is made, children may be caught by the rising window.
- When vehicle is driving or before closing the window, make sure that all parts of passenger’ s body (such as hands) are in the vehicle, otherwise, personal injury may be caused.
- To avoid personal injury, it is driver’ s responsibility to guide all passengers to operate power window up/down switch and especially to prevent children from using it incorrectly. Ensure that vehicle power has been switched to OFF mode or non-mechanical device is closed when leaving the vehicle.
- Take extra care when closing windows, failure to do so may cause serious jamming and injury! For models with window jam protection function, jam protection function can be activated in jam protection area to protect passenger. However, for the thin or soft objects, jam protection function may not be activated, resulting in serious injury.

Window Remote Control Function

Remote control window down function

While vehicle power is switched to OFF mode, four doors are closed and unlock button on smart key is pressed and hold, windows of four doors will go down automatically. If unlock button on smart key is released or any door is opened in this process, window will stop going down.

Remote control window up function (if equipped)

While vehicle power is switched to OFF mode, four doors are closed, lock button on smart key is pressed, the vehicle will enter arming status and four door window will go up automatically. Unlock/lock doors in automatic window up process and windows will stop going down.

READ

If abnormal closing occurs during remote control one-touch window up, turn signal lights flash 1 time and horn continuously sounds 5 times to alarm you that window may not close normally.

WARNING

Before using remote control up window function, please take extra care. Remote control up/down window function can be used only when the vehicle can be seen clearly and make sure that passengers cannot be caught by window.

Window Jam Protection Function

Jam protection function

During one-touch window up or remote control one-touch window up, if obstacle is encountered in jam protection area and resistance exceeds a certain value, window will stop rising and go down slightly. To close window, move away obstacle and operate again.

To protect the window regulation system, window jam protection function and one-touch window up function will be canceled in some conditions to avoid potential safety hazard. At this time, the window only has the conventional up-down function. After jam protection learning, the one-touch window up function of corresponding door will return to normal.

Canceling jam protection function

If obstacle is encountered twice continuously when rising the window, the window will stop rising, jam protection function will be canceled. If the battery cable is disconnected during working or non-working process, jam protection function will be canceled.

Overheat protection function

To protect motor, if window up-down operation is performed continuously, overheat protection function actively disables the control of corresponding window switch. After motor temperature returns to normal, it recovers. This function will not affect the use of other normal window up-down functions.

Manual learning function

If one-touch window up function and jam protection function do not operate, perform the following steps to resume function. Make sure that there are no obstacles within window range during learning.

Step 1: When the vehicle is powered on;

Step 2: Manually and continuously operate window switch to fully close the window and hold at that position for 2 seconds, and then release the switch;

Step 3: Manually and continuously operate window switch to fully open the window and hold at that position for 2 seconds, and then release the switch;

Step 4: Try to operate automatic window up function;

Step 5: If window cannot be closed automatically, please repeat the above steps to set.

If automatic window up function cannot resume after repeating the above steps, please go to authorized service centre for inspection and repair as soon as possible.

Note: If window memory position is lost, it can also be set with remote control one-touch window up function. At this time, window will go down to bottom, then go up to top. Window can be closed normally while setting is successful.

READ

When driving over roads with potholes or uneven surfaces, gravity may affect door system unexpectedly. In this case, window may reverse and go down while rising by one-touch window up function. This is a small probability event and normal.

CAUTION

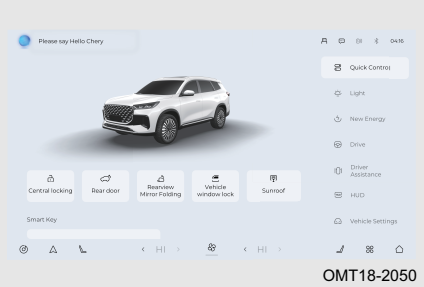
- If battery cable is disconnected and reconnected, automatic window up function and jam protection function will not work.
- Jam protection function is a kind of window safety protection function. Never try to active it repeatedly using various objects, in improper methods or even by intentionally pinching any part of your body. Failure to do so may cause damage to window regulation system mechanism or accidental personal injury.
- When closing window, always keep the window close area clear even if it is equipped with jam protection function, otherwise, if there is a thin object and system cannot sense it, jam protection will not work. If someone's hand or finger is caught, extremely serious injury may be caused.

3-4. Panoramic Moon Roof

Panoramic Moon Roof (If Equipped)

There are many ways to open/close moon roof, such as by moon roof switch, voice recognition.

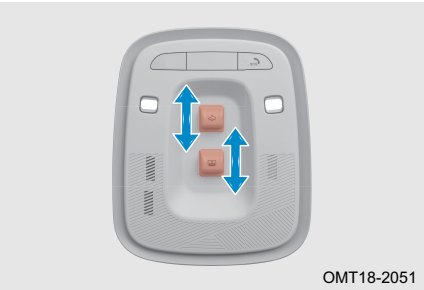
Quick control



OMT18-2050

When the vehicle is powered on, click " " button through Audio System - Settings - Quick Control to turn on/off moon roof.

Switch control


OMT18-2051

Opening/closing sunshade

Push " " switch backward when sunshade is closed, sunshade will slide to middle position. Push " " switch again, sunshade will slide to fully open position.

Push " " switch forward when sunshade is fully open, sunshade will slide to middle position. Push " " switch again, sunshade will slide to fully close position.

Tilting up/closing moon roof

Push " " switch backward when moon roof is closed, the moon roof will tilt up.

Push " " switch forward when the moon roof is tilted up to close moon roof; Or directly push the " " switch forward, the moon roof will automatically close first, and then the sunshade will close.

Opening/closing moon roof

With moon roof tilted up, push " " switch backward to slide and open the moon roof. Push " " switch again to slide and open the moon roof to the maximum position.

Push " " switch forward when the moon roof is opening to close moon roof; Or directly push the " " switch forward, the moon roof will automatically close first, and then the sunshade will close.

READ

- For details about voice recognition function, refer to "Audio System" section.
- If you find there is a false jam protection, please go to authorized service centre for inspection and repair as soon as possible.
- Moon roof switch and sunshade switch are designed in 2 levels; first level is manual control opening range; second level is automatic control opening range, please select a proper level according to your demands.

CAUTION

- Failure in moon roof jam protection function may cause initial memory position to be lost, therefore, it is necessary to recalibrate the position.
- When moon roof is frozen or covered with snow, forcibly opening moon roof will damage the moon roof glass and motor.
- If there is water on moon roof after raining, always drain it off before opening, to prevent water from flowing into cab.
- Regularly clean the dust and debris in moon roof rails and strips with water; after vehicle washing or raining, completely wipe the water on the moon roof glass before use.

WARNING

- Do not leave children alone in vehicle. If accidental operation of moon roof switch is made, their heads or hands may be hurt.
- When vehicle is driving or before closing the moon roof, make sure that all parts of passenger’s body (such as hands) are in the vehicle, otherwise, personal injury may be caused.

Moon Roof Remote Control Function

Moon roof remote open function

While vehicle power is switched to OFF mode and four doors are closed, press and hold unlock button on smart key for a few seconds, sunshade is opened and then moon roof is opened; press the lock button during opening of moon roof, the moon roof stops moving.

Moon roof remote close function

While vehicle power is switched to OFF mode and four doors are closed, press lock button on smart key, and vehicle enters arming mode. Moon roof closes automatically first, then the sunshade closes; Press the lock button, the moon roof complete the current operation.

⚠ WARNING

Before using moon roof remote close function, please take extra care. Moon roof remote close function can be used only when the vehicle can be seen clearly and make sure that passengers cannot be caught by moon roof.

Moon Roof Jam Protection Function

Jam protection function

When the moon roof movable glass (sunshade) encounters an obstacle in jam protection area and resistance exceeds a certain value during one-touch closed, it will stop, and the moon roof (sunshade) will rebound.

Manual learning function

If the moon roof unable to moved to closed position with one-button, unable to fully open with one-button, moon roof tilting up after closing, moon roof glass unable to open or close normally, sunshade unable to open or close, etc. Please follow the operation instructions below to reset.

Step 1: When the vehicle is powered on, operate the moon roof/sunshade to the fully open and closed position; Long press the moon roof/sunshade close button manually until you hear a clicking sound from the moon roof/sunshade motor (moon roof glass/sunshade will move back and forth slightly), stop the long press action and try to one-button open/close again.

Note: It effective until after the moon roof reaches the closed position. If there is no response or if it triggers a rebound when closing, proceed to step 2.

Step 2: Press the moon roof/sunshade automatic opening button and release it, during the process of moon roof/sunshade automatic opening, long press the moon roof/sunshade close button; Observe the movement of moon roof/ sunshade from paused to closed position, keep pressing the close button until you hear a"click" sound of the reset of the moon roof/sunshade motor (the moon roof glass/sunshade will move back and forth slightly).

Note: Be sure to release the button during the automatic opening process of moon roof/sunshade before pressing the close button.

⚠ CAUTION

- If the problem cannot be solved by repeating the above operation, please go to authorized service centre for inspection and repair as soon as possible.
- If the battery cable is disconnected and reconnected, there may be a loss of moon roof initialization, resulting in the moon roof being unable to open or close.
- When closing the moon roof, always keep the moon roof closing area clear even if it is equipped with jam protection function. Otherwise, the jam protection will not work when the moon roof encountering thin objects. If passenger’ s hand or finger is caught, serious injury may be caused.
- Jam protection function is a kind of passengers protection function. Never try to activate it by repeatedly using various objects, improper methods or even with some part of body. Failure to do so may damage moon roof function or cause accidental personal injury.

3-5. Audio System

Audio View



OMT18-2060

1 Home page

Click to return to home page.

2 Application

Click to enter APP application.

3 Seat control

Click to enter seat control screen.

4 Card type interactive screen

Swipe to view, click on the card to enter the corresponding APP, long press the card to customize.

5 Driver temperature adjustment

Click or slide left and right to adjust the air conditioning temperature for driver.

6 Click to pop up the air conditioning system operation screen.

7 Front passenger temperature adjustment

Click or slide left and right to adjust the air conditioning temperature for front passenger.

8 Seat control

Click to enter seat control screen.

9 Navigation

Click to enter navigation screen.

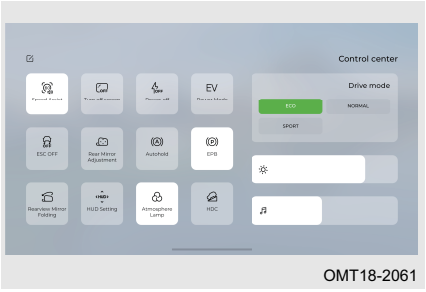
10 Multimedia

Click to enter multimedia screen.

Note: Long press " ☆ " and "🗗" buttons for 10 seconds to restart the audio system.

Some models of radio support DAB/RDS function.

Control Center



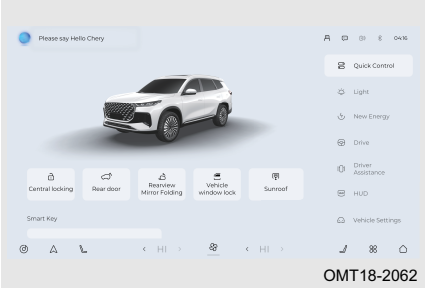
OMT18-2061

When the vehicle is powered on, the control center screen can be displayed by sliding the screen down in the audio screen.

The drive mode, display off, Auto Hold, Rear Mirror Adjustment, ESP OFF, HDC, screen cleaning, hotspot, Ambient Lighting, AVM, Wiper Sensitivity, Rearview Mirror Folding, Turn off screen etc. can be set on the Control center screen.

Setting

Quick control



OMT18-2062

Central locking: Click "🔒" button to unlock/lock doors.

Rear lock: Click "🚗" button to open/close the back door.

Rearview Mirror Folding: Click " " button to fold/unfold rear view mirror.

Vehicle window lock: Click " " button to turn on/off passenger side window OFF function. After that, passenger side windows only can be operated by driver side window switch (this function is recommended when there is a child in vehicle).

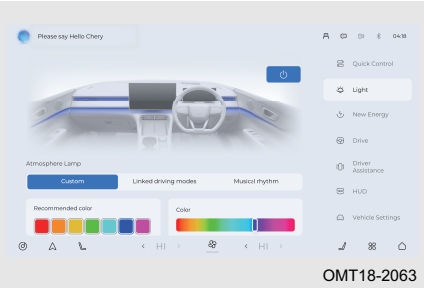
Sunroof: Click " " button to turn on/off sunroof.

Smart Key: Set approach unlocking and away locking.

Rear view mirror: Set the rear view mirror adjustment, Automatic folding of outsiderear-view mirror and Automatic adjustment of rear-view mirror when reversina.

More: Set the steering wheel button customization and easy seat access/exit.

Lighting



OMT18-2063

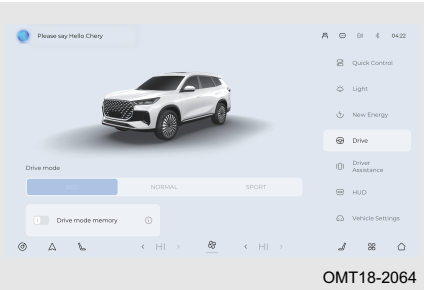
Turn on/off ambient light.

Light setting: Set Welcome when approaching, headlight delay, intelligent high beam assist and headlamp music rhythm.

Smart welcome light: Set Close, Effect of rising dragon and leaping tiger and effect of tiger roaring and dragon singing.

Headlight leveling adjusting: Set the headlight leveling adjusting (level 0/ level 1/level 2/level 3).

Driving

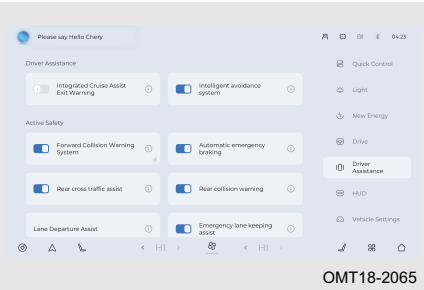


OMT18-2064

Drive mode: Set the drive mode (ECO/Normal/Sport/Snow/ Mud/ Sand/Off-road) and drive mode memory.

Power mode: Set HEV,EV and EV+.

Driving assisted

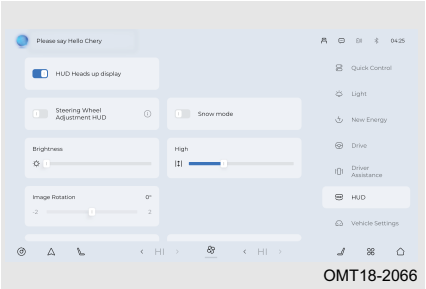


OMT18-2065

Driver assistance: Set ICCS cancellation reminder and Intelligent avoidance system.

Active Safety: Set Forward Collision Warning System (FCW), Automatic emergency braking, Rear cross traffic assist, Rear collision warning, Lane keeping assist, Emergency lane keeping, intelligent speed control, blind spot detection, door open warning, traffic sign recognition, departure warning and traffic sign recongnition.

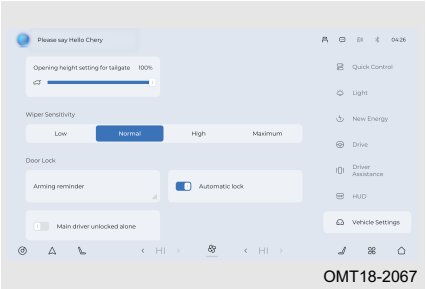
Head up display



OMT18-2066

Turn on/off HUD head up display: Set to adjust HUD, brightness, high, image rotation, snow mode, information display and reset.

Vehicle settings



OMT18-2067

Back door opening height: Slide to adjust the back door opening height.

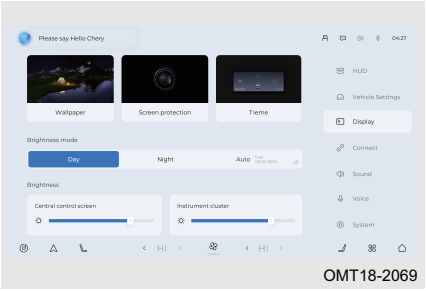
Wiper sensitivity: Set the wiper sensitivity (Low/Standard/High/ Maximum).

Door lock: Set arming reminder, automatic lock and main driver unlocked alone.

Maintenance: Set maintenance prompt and maintenance mileage reset.

Chassis: Set steering power mode.

Display



OMT18-2069

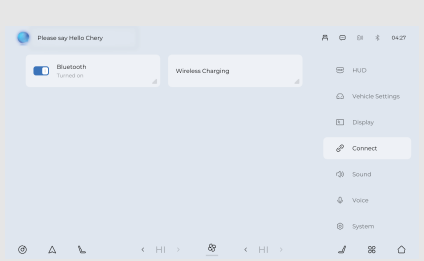
Set the wallpaper and screen protection.

Display mode: Set the display mode (Day/Night/Auto).

Brightness: Set and adjust the brightness of central control screen and dash board.

More: Set video restriction, screen cleaning and restore default values .

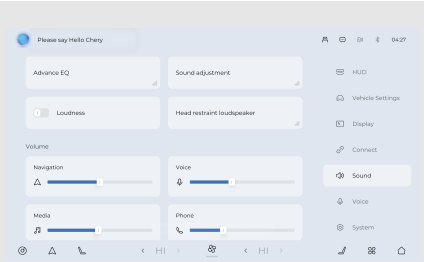
Connection



OMT18-2070

Set Bluetooth Wi-Fi and wireless charging.

Sound

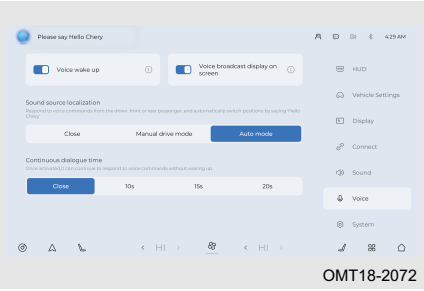


OMT18-2071

Volume: Set the volume for navigation, voice, media and phone, etc.

More: Set vehicle speed volume, alarm sound type, button tone, incoming broadcast and default setting restoring.

Voice

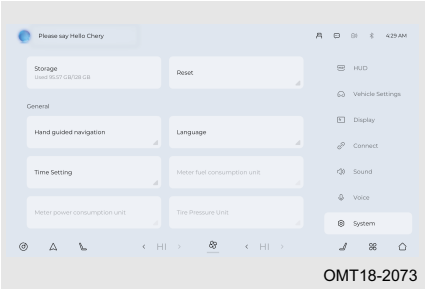


OMT18-2072

Voice: Turn on voice wake-up to locate and identify theorientation of sound, and continue to respond to voicecommands without wake-up.

Privacy permission settings: You can set the privacypermission.

System



OMT18-2073

About: Version information, Device name, Storage and Reset.

Privacy: Permission management and privacy policy details.

General: Hand guided navigation, Language, Time Setting, Driver Monitoring System Alarm.

Power consumption units:Set Wh/km and kWh/100 km.

Tyre pressure units:kPa,psi and bar.

READ

The setting items are different depending on the software versions. Please refer to the actual vehicle configuration.

Audio Button


OMT18-2074

"⧉" button: Short press to cycle the information display area on the instrument cluster.

" 🎤 " button: Short press to wake up the voice recognition function; Long press to wake up the phone voice assistant (It is necessary to connect with phone).

" ○ " button: Short press to pause when music/radio is playing.

"🔊+" button: Short press to increase volume.

"🔊−" button: Short press to decrease volume.

" •< " button: Short press to switch to previous track in music mode; Short press to switch to previous centre in radio mode; Hang up while calling.

" >• " button: Short press to switch to next track in music mode; Short press to switch to next centre in radio mode; Answer the call while calling.



Dial the button upward to increase the volume and dial the button downward to decrease the volume.

Voice Recognition Function

Voice recognition function can control the functions (such as navigation, phone, window, moon roof, air conditioning, seat heating, seat ventilation) by voice, so that you can have a better experience while driving.

Voice recognition function can be waken up using the following methods when audio system is turned on:

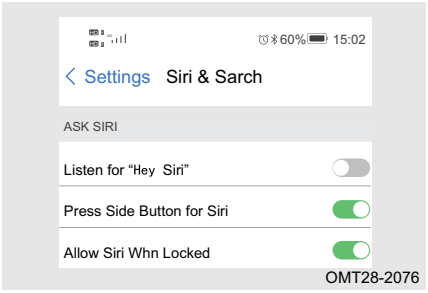
Method 1: Directly say "Hi, Xiaoqi" to enable the voice recognition function.

Method 2: Short press the " " button to enable the voice recognition function.

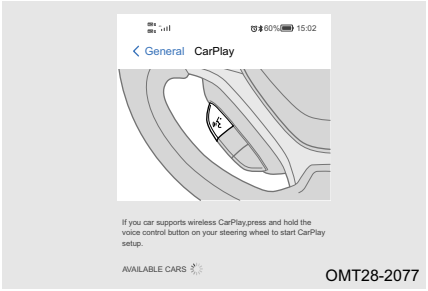
Phone-link

Apple CarPlay (iOS)

■ Connecting method



Step 1: Turn Listen for "Hey Siri" and Press Home for Siri to ON on Settings (Siri&search) screen of phone;

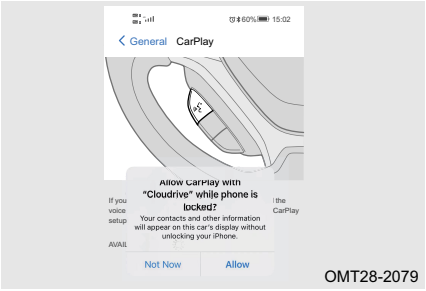


Step 2: Turn CarPlay to ON on Settings (General) screen of phone;


OMT18-2170

Step 3: Connect USB port and phone using original data cable;

Note: Only USB port " " supports Apple CarPlay screencast function.



OMT28-2079

Step 4: Select Allow on CarPlay permission request screen;

Step 5: Enter Apple CarPlay screencast screen.

■ Wireless carplay connection (if equipped)

Step 1: Turn on hotspot on Apple phone, audio head unit WIFI interface is connected to phone hotspot.

Step 2: Connect Apple phone to Bluetooth on audio head unit.

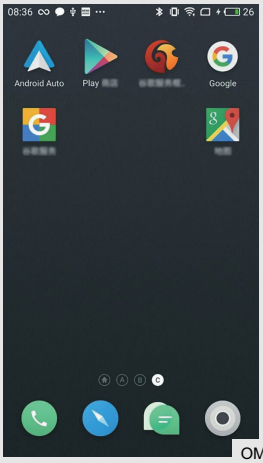
Step 3:Select Carplay according to interface that pops up on audio head unit or phone.

Step 4: Make pairing connection according to pop-up interface on phone; after connection is successfully, audio head unit displays carplay interface.

Step 5: Enter Apple CarPlay screencast screen.

Android Auto (Android)

■ Connecting method



OMT28-2083

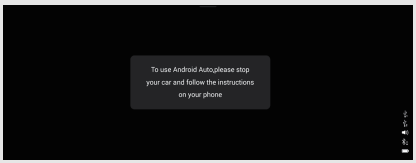
Step 1: Install the Google Framework;

Step 2: Perform the installation in Google Play and run Android Auto, install all supporting softwares according to the system prompt and update the existing program, and then Android Auto can run normal after completing the update.


OMT18-2170

Step 3: Connect USB port and phone using original data cable;

Note: Only USB port " " supports Android Auto screencast function. Before phone-link, please turn on the developer permissions in the phone settings.



OMT28-2084

Step 4: If this phone is connected to the vehicle for the first time (a prompt will pop up on the head unit, please operate according to the prompt on the mobile phone, stop the vehicle and apply the parking brake), then the first connection setting can be completed;

Step 5: Click "Android Auto" on the audio main screen to enter "Android Auto" mapping interface.

■ Wireless Android Auto connection (if equipped)

Step 1: Turn on wireless Android Auto switch on the phone.

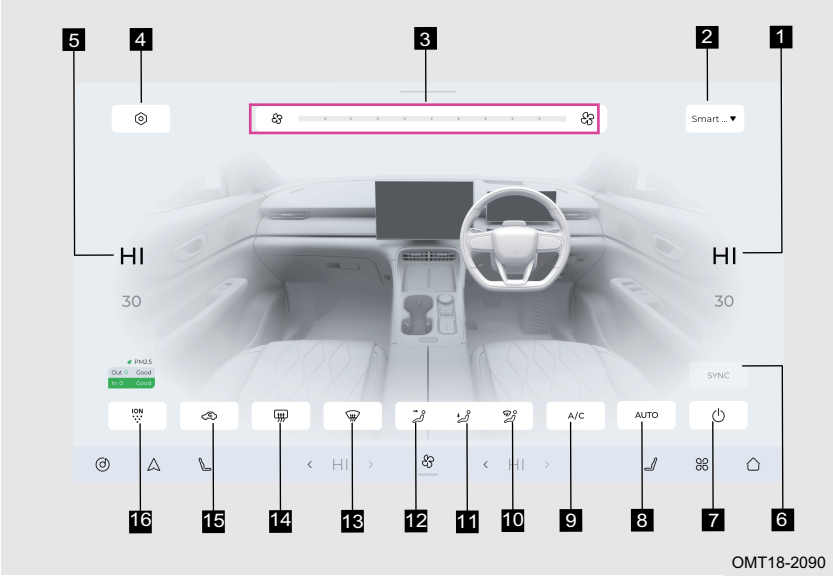
Step 2: Turn on Wi-Fi hotspot on head unit.

Step 3: Perform Bluetooth pairing between head unit and mobile phone.

Step 4: After Bluetooth connection is successful, a reminder to start wireless Android Auto will pop up on head unit, click "START" to complete wireless Android Auto connection.

3-6. Air Conditioning System

Front A/C



1 Driver temperature adjustment area

2 Intelligent mode button (if equipped)

3 Airflow volume adjustment area

4 Setting button

5 Front passenger temperature adjustment area

6 Dual mode button

7 A/C switch button

8 AUTO button

9 A/C button

10 Window mode button

11 Foot mode button

12 Face mode button

13 Defogging and defrosting button

14 Rear defrosting button

15 Outside/recirculated air mode button

16 Air purification button (if equipped)



OMT18-2091

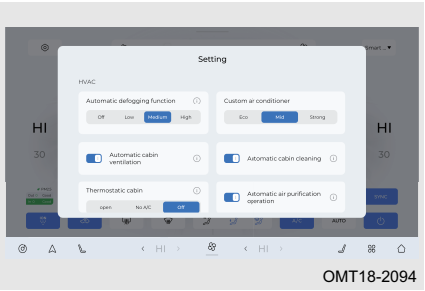
"A/C": A/C button.

" ": Defogging and defrosting button.

"AUTO": AUTO button.

": Rear defrosting button.

A/C Setting



OMT18-2094

When the vehicle is powered on, set the Automatic defogging function (Off/Low/Medium/High), Custom air conditioner (Eco/Mid/Strong), Automatic cabin ventilation, Automatic cabin cleaning, Thermostatic cabin (open, No A/C and Off), Automatic air purification operation on HVAC Setting screen.

Automatic defogging function: A/C will automatically defog when there is a risk of fogging in vehicle to ensure driving safety.

Automatic cabin ventilation: The vehicle will be automatically ventilated before unlocking and entering the vehicle.

Air Conditioning Operation

Temperature adjustment

Operate the temperature adjustment area to realize the adjustment of air conditioning temperature.

Air volume adjustment

Operate the airflow volume adjustment area to realize the airflow volume adjustment of air conditioning.

A/C switch button

Click A/C switch button to realize on/off of air conditioning system.

A/C button

Click A/C button to realize air conditioning cooling (air conditioning compressor starts to operate).

Dual mode button

Click the dual mode button to switch between single mode/dual mode (air conditioning temperature of driver/front passenger can be adjusted separately).

READ
System will memorize the operation before head unit is turned off last time by default when turning on head unit.

Mode adjustment button

Window mode, face mode, and foot mode can be used separately or in combination, with a total of 7 modes: Window mode, face mode, foot mode, face and foot mode, foot and window mode, face and window mode, face, foot and window mode.

Window mode: It can adjust airflow blowing out from defroster outlet.

Foot mode: It can adjust airflow blowing out from foot outlet.

Face mode: It can adjust airflow blowing out from center and face outlets on both sides.

Foot and window mode: It can adjust airflow blowing out from foot and window outlets.

Face and foot mode: It can adjust airflow blowing out from center and face and foot outlets on both sides.

Face and window mode: It can adjust airflow blowing out from center and face and window outlets on both sides.

Face, foot and window mode: It can adjust airflow blowing out from center and face, foot and window outlets on both sides.

READ
If front windshield become fogged-up during driving, defrosting mode is recommended. Click the defogging and defrosting button.

Outside/recirculated air mode button

The outside/recirculated air mode can be switched by clicking the outside/recirculated air mode button.

■ Use the recirculated air mode under following conditions:

1. In dusty environment.
2. To quickly cool the air in the vehicle.
3. To isolate other odors from outside.
4. To prevent outside exhaust gas from entering vehicle.

AUTO button

Click AUTO button to turn on automatic mode.

■ System remains in automatic mode under following conditions:

1. Click AUTO button in automatic mode, and system does not exit the automatic mode.
2. In automatic mode, outside/recirculated air mode switches and the outside/recirculated function exits from the automatic control, and other functions are still in the automatic mode.
3. When operating A/C button or mode adjustment button or adjusting air volume in automatic mode, the operated function will exit the automatic mode, however, other functions will be still in automatic mode.

Air purification button (if equipped)

Click air purification button to turn on (inside/outside PM2.5 value is displayed on audio system)/off the air purification function.

■ Air purification function turns off automatically under the following conditions:

1. Outside/recirculated air mode switches.
2. Airflow volume is adjusted to OFF.
3. Temperature is adjusted to LOW/HI.
4. Front windshield defogging and defrosting function is turned on.

READ

- The air purification function effect in winter is not obvious due to low ambient temperature.
- When the air purification function is turned on, the outside/recirculated air mode is switched, and air volume and mode may change.
- Turn on air purification function to ensure that the vehicle is not fogged, the response method of automatic A/C in summer, winter, spring and autumn is not exactly the same, but purification effect can be achieved.
- Air purification function is inoperative and the button is deactivated in following conditions:
  - Air purification function cannot be turned on when temperature conditions are not met.
  - Air purification function cannot be turned on when front windshield defogging and defrosting function is turned on.
  - When the wiper is turned on (in high speed or low speed), air purification function cannot be turned on after a few seconds.

Defogging and defrosting button

After vehicle is started, click defogging and defrosting button to turn on (adjust airflow to make most of it blow to front windshield and small amount of it blow to side window) /off front windshield defogging and defrosting function.

When the airflow volume is turned on, operate defogging and defrosting button to turn on outside air mode and air conditioning compressor forcibly.

READ

- If the A/C fails to cool, the defogging effect will be affected. Please go to authorized service centre for inspection and repair as soon as possible.
- When defogging in humid climate (such as rain and snow), please keep A/C on. If A/C is off, the defogging effect will be affected.
- When defogging in humid climate (such as rain and snow), please keep in outside air mode. If recirculated air mode is selected, the defogging effect will be affected.
- After wiping off all frost or fog, adjust mode and airflow volume to other proper position to improve comfort in vehicle.
- When defogging in winter, please keep in outside air mode. To adjust to the direction of partial heat, make air outlets on both sides of the instrument panel face the both sides of windows; when outside temperature is above 0℃, A/C auxiliary defogging is needed.

CAUTION

- For driving safety, please use the defogging function correctly.
- Do not use recirculated air mode for a long time in winter, otherwise the front windshield will be fogged up quickly.
- Poor glass visibility will increase the risk of traffic accidents and personal injury. Therefore, it is very important for traffic safety to ensure a good visibility during driving.

Rear defrosting button

After vehicle is started, click rear defrosting button to turn on/off rear windshield/outside rear view mirror defrosting function.

The rear windshield/outside rear view mirror defrosting function will turn off automatically after operating for about 20 minutes.

CAUTION

- The outside rear view mirror defrosting function is not a standard configuration. Please refer to the actual vehicle configuration.
- Do not scratch or damage the heater wires when cleaning the rear windshield/outside rear view mirror.
- Make sure that the defrosting function of rear windshield/outside rear view mirror is turned off after defogging or defrosting the rear windshield/outside rear view mirror surface.
- When the battery is low, the rear windshield/outside rear view mirror defrosting function may not be turned on to ensure the normal starting of vehicle.

⚠ WARNING
To prevent burning yourself, do not touch the rear windshield/outside rear view mirror when the defrosting function of rear windshield/outside rear view mirror is operating or immediately after being turned off.

Front windshield heating (if equipped)

Press the touch button to turn on/off the function. Avoid turning on the front windshield heating function for a long time.

Air Conditioning Heating

After vehicle is started, operate the audio system temperature adjustment area and airflow volume adjustment area; It is recommended to adjust mode to foot mode and turn off refrigeration system (A/C indicator turns off, and air conditioning compressor stops operating) or set the temperature to 22 ℃ or higher, click the AUTO button, and air conditioning will automatically operate and heat to a comfortable temperature.

Turn on AUTO mode and setting the temperature to 22 ℃ will better balance the A/C effect and energy consumption. If the heating demand is greater, it is recommended to turn on AUTO mode and set the temperature above 22℃ for better A/C effect.

A/C Cooling

After vehicle is started, click audio system AUTO button and A/C automatically controls operation of mode, airflow volume, outside/recirculated air mode and refrigeration system. In order to adapt to the different people's physique, the setting temperature can be fluctuated up and down at 22℃, which can obtain the best cooling effect.

Turn on AUTO mode and setting the temperature to 22 ℃ will better balance the A/C effect and energy consumption. If the refrigeration demand is greater, it is recommended to turn on AUTO mode and set the temperature below 22℃ for better A/C effect.

■ For the best cooling effect, please keep the surface of A/C filter clean without obvious blockage, then operate as follows:

Step 1: Adjust air volume to the maximum level;

Step 2: Adjust temperature to Max Cool;

Step 3: Adjust outside/recirculated air mode to recirculated air mode;

Step 4: Adjust to face mode;

Step 5: Turn on the refrigeration system (A/C indicator turns on, and air conditioning compressor starts operating).

READ

- Dirt and blockage in the surface of air conditioning condenser may cause poor cooling effect, please keep condenser clean.
- When air cools down quickly in hot and humid conditions, the fog may be seen from outlet, which is a normal physical phenomenon.
- When the temperature is low, such as in winter, even if indicator comes on after operating A/C switch, A/C compressor still cannot be started.
- After the A/C system cooling operation, some water may drip from the air conditioning drain pipe and form a pool under vehicle, which is normal.
- After temperature in vehicle decreases to a lower temperature, compressor will turn off automatically to reduce the influence on power of power system and fuel consumption, this is normal.
- Refrigerant filled in air conditioning system will decrease over time, if you feel that the refrigeration effect of air conditioning becomes poor, please go to authorized service centre for inspection and repair in time.
- It is recommended to turn on air conditioning refrigeration system for 5 minutes or more every month and open the window simultaneously, this will help to prevent air conditioning system damage due to lack of lubricant, and also prevent evaporator odor due to moist and germs.
- During sudden acceleration, overtaking and climbing, power system needs more power for compensation. At this time, if the air conditioning is operating, the compressor may be turned off automatically, if it does not turn off automatically and you feel it is lack of power, it is recommended to turn off air conditioning.
- If air conditioning is on and vehicle is continually climbing long slopes, or is in heavy slow moving traffic for a prolonged period, the engine may become overheated. Please observe the high coolant temperature warning indicator. If engine overheats, it is recommended to drive vehicle to a safe area and stop it, turn off A/C and let vehicle idle for several minutes, then check if high coolant temperature warning indicator goes off. If not, please contact authorized service centre for inspection and repair immediately.

⚠ WARNING

- To extend service life of air conditioning system, do not use the air conditioning for a long time with low speed when performing air conditioning cooling.
- It is forbidden to repair air conditioning system by yourself, as the high pressure refrigerant in air conditioning system is harmful to human. It is necessary to go to authorized service centre for inspection and repair.
- Please purchase special refrigerant and compressor lubricant at the authorized service station, or air conditioning system damages sustained by this are not under warranty.
- In hot weather, the temperature in closed vehicle will quickly increase due to sunshine, this may cause personal or animal injury or even death, especially for infants and very young children.

Intelligent Mode (If Equipped)

Quick heating

All windows are closed, seat heating (if equipped) is turned on, outside circulation is turned on with maximum airflow and highest temperature, and foot mode is turned on; Wait until the inside temperature reaches the comfortable temperature or manually click this button to automatically turn off the quick heating.

Quick cooling

All windows are closed, seat ventilation (if equipped) is turned on, inside circulation is turned on with maximum airflow and lowest temperature, and face mode is turned on; Wait until the inside temperature reaches the comfortable temperature or manually click this button to automatically turn off the quick cooling.

Intelligent deodorization

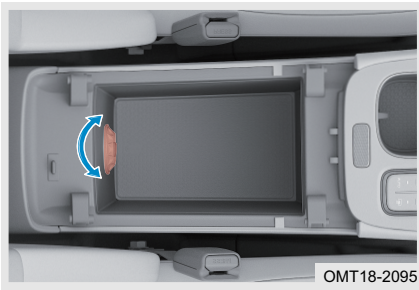
Outside circulation is turned on with maximum airflow.

Constant Temperature Cabin Function (If Equipped)

During the maximum parking time for 12 hours after leaving the vehicle, the constant temperature cabin function will be turned on to control the inside temperature below 45° C. Set the air conditioning operating mode when the interior temperature is too high. Three air conditioning modes: ON, no A/C and OFF.

- Activating the function will reduce the driving mileage.
- No A/C mode can reduce energy consumption, but the temperature may exceed 45°C.

Refrigeration/Warming Function of Armrest Box


OMT18-2095

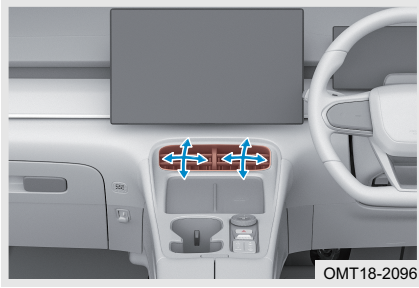
Place the required items (such as canned drinks) in armrest box, adjust A/C to face or face/foot mode and perform A/C refrigeration/warming operation, then turn the internal damper of the armrest box to refrigerate/warm the required items.

⚠ WARNING

Armrest box cannot be closed if the items is oversize. The opened armrest box may hinder the movement of driver’s arm, be careful not to be injured.

Air Outlets Airflow Control

Front outlets


OMT18-2096

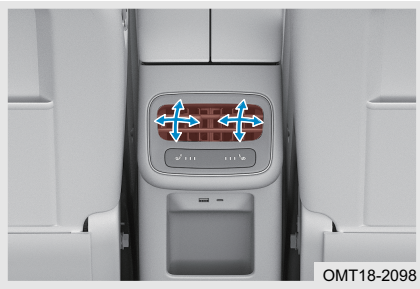
Move center outlet adjustment lever up and down, left and right by hand to adjust direction of airflow.

Front side outlets


OMT18-2097

Move left/right side outlet adjustment lever up and down, left and right by hand to adjust direction of airflow.

Second row outlets

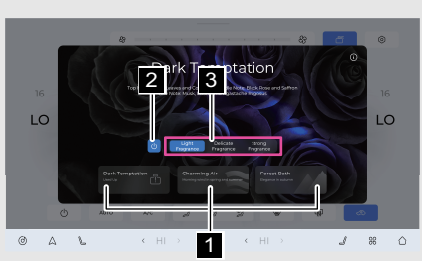

OMT18-2098

Move the second row outlet adjustment lever up, down, left or right by hand to adjust direction of airflow.

3-7. Fragrance System (If Equipped)

Fragrance System (If Equipped)

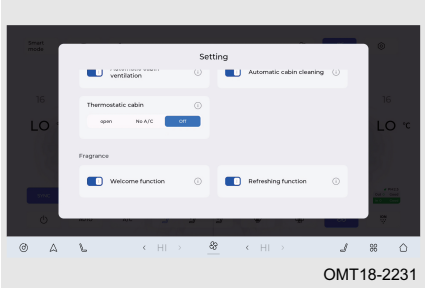
The fragrance system keeps the air inside the vehicle clean, remove odors, and acts as an air purifier. It is beneficial to driver's safety, and it can create a cosy and inviting atmosphere in the narrow interior space of the vehicle to keep driver alert and calm, thus reducing the incidence of driving accidents.



OMT18-2230

1 Fragrance selection button
2 Fragrance switch button
3 Concentration adjustment button

Fragrance Installation Instructions



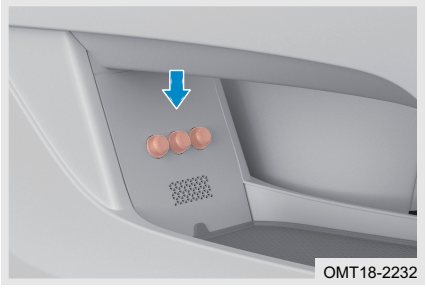
OMT18-2231

When the vehicle is powered on, and turn on the fragrance installation instructions through Fragrance in A/C setting screen.

Click different fragrance cards to select different fragrance based on the needs.

When the fragrance bottle is insufficient, the fragrance installation instructions screen shows "- Insufficient remaining amount". When no fragrance bottle is installed, the fragrance installation instructions screen displays "No Fragrance". Replace with the new fragrance bottle according to the animation on the fragrance installation instructions screen.

Replacing Fragrance



OMT18-2232

The fragrance is located in auxiliary fascia console center channel.

Step 1: Gently pull out the head of the fragrance bottle and pull out the fragrance bottle;

Step 2: Take out the new fragrance bottle from the gift box and insert it into the empty channel to make the fragrance bottle and the fragrance generator automatically be engaged;

Step 3: Select the new fragrance in the large screen fragrance interface and enjoy it immediately.

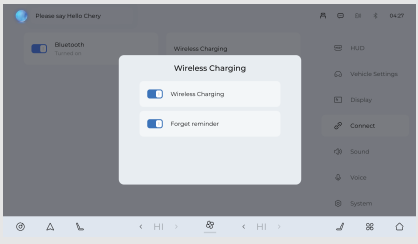
⚠ CAUTION

- Please avoid direct inhalation through the mouth and nose, and use with caution for people who are sensitive to scent.
- The fragrance concentration will gradually fade over time, please use the fragrance as soon as possible after opening bottle.
- Please keep the fragrance bottle out of the reach of children to avoid harm to them (to avoid accidental ingestion by children).
- Please go to authorized service centre to purchase the fragrance cartridge to replace, so as to avoid damaging the fragrance system and ensure the best fragrance experience.
- During installation and removal of the fragrance bottle, do not touch the spice stick to avoid excessive fragrance odor on both hands, which may affect the fragrance experience.
- Because the chemical property of natural raw materials is unstable, the appearance color change of spice stick in the fragrance bottle is normal due to catalysis of oxidation or light, and it has no effect on performance, use and safety, etc.

3-8. Wireless Charging (If Equipped)

Wireless Charging (CWC) (If Equipped)

Wireless charging uses electromagnetic induction technology conveniently and safely to allow for a better experience while driving.



OMT18-2110

When the vehicle is powered on, turn on Wireless Charging through Audio System - Setting - Connect.

Note: The wireless charging function is enabled by default.

Usage methods



Turn vehicle power to non-OFF mode and the wireless charging function is enabled, when the wireless charging starts to work after putting the mobile phone in wireless charging sensing area, the audio system updates the charging icon in real-time based on the charging status. If the charging fails, the charging icon turns red.

■ In the following conditions, the wireless charging may not work properly:

1. The mobile phone cannot be charged if the back of phone is more than 6 mm away from wireless charging sensing area.
2. The mobile phone cannot be charged if the back of the phone has thick metal (such as coin, metal mobile phone shell), and audio system charging icon prompts abnormal charging.
3. If the temperature of the phone itself or the wireless charging sensing area (-surface) is too high, the phone may not be able to enter charging mode. It is recommended to wait for the temperature to decrease before charging.
4. Due to different information security requirements from different mobile phone manufacturers, some brand of phones may not be able to release fully charged information to the wireless charging module, and even after being fully charged, the screen of the head unit still displays the charging status icon.
5. If the phone malfunctions, it may also cause the inability to charge. Other compliant mobile phones can be used for wireless charging detecting to confirm if there is a malfunction with the phone.

READ

- Wireless charging function supports fast charging for some phones(15W).
- Please put the mobile phone in the center of mobile phone slot. If you accelerate, decelerate or turn sharply during driving, the mobile phone will shake, which may affect the charging efficiency and stability.

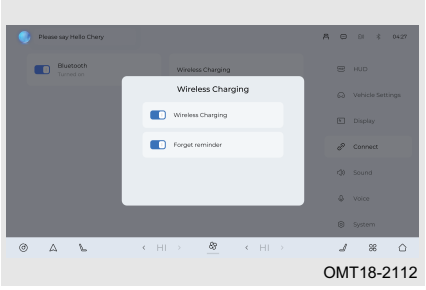
⚠ CAUTION

- In the process of normal use of the vehicle, there will be a temporary charging shielding, so that vehicle may identify the smart key. At the same time, do not place metal objects such as the smart key on the wireless charging tray.
- If the mobile phone cannot be charged normally when the vehicle is awakened, make sure that there is no foreign matter in the wireless charging area and wait for the wireless charging area to cool before trying. If it is still unable to charge, it is recommended that you contact authorized service station.
- Only the mobile phones which supports wireless charging can be charged in this area. If your mobile phone does not support the wireless charging function, it is recommended that do not use the wireless charging patch. The quality of the wireless charging patch in the market is uneven, and damage may be caused if using frequently (such as function failure, poor interface contact, metal foreign object recognition failure).

⚠ WARNING

- Passengers using pacemakers or other medical devices should turn off the phone wireless charging function before driving.
- During driving, do not check the charging status of mobile phone for a long time to avoid potential traffic safety hazard.
- Do not place heavy objects in the charging area or impact the surface of the wireless charger to avoid damage to the charging area.
- During the program upgrade process, please do not place any items in the charging area to avoid abnormal wireless charging function after the upgrade.
- The wireless charging module only supports charging one phone at a time, and the company does not make promises for any problems caused by illegal operations.
- During wireless charging, do not place ETC card/ID card/NFC card key/ credit card, etc. in the charging area, as this may cause damage to card data.
- To prevent battery depleted, do not use high-power wireless charging function for a long time when the vehicle is not applied high voltage; When there is no driver in vehicle, please do not place your phone in the vehicle for charging to avoid safety hazards.
- Do not splash liquids (water, beverages, etc.) on the charging panel to prevent liquids from entering the wireless charger through the gaps in the charging panel, causing charger failure. Do not use grease, oil or alcohol to clean the charging panel. If you accidentally spill liquid on the charging panel, please wipe it immediately with a dry cloth.
- Do not place coins, keys, chip cards or other metal items in the charging area. Otherwise, it may cause the metal object to be heated, leading to abnormal charging or causing safety accidents. If any metal foreign matter between mobile phone and charging pad is found, the wireless charging function should be immediately turned off. Do not remove the foreign matter immediately by hand to avoid burns.

Phone forgetting reminder function



OMT18-2112

When the vehicle is powered on, turn on Forget reminder through Audio System - Settings - Connect.

Turn vehicle power to OFF mode, open driver door, if mobile phone is left in wireless charging sensing area, and the audio system sounds prompt to remind the user to take the phone out.

3-9. OTA Upgrade (If Equipped)

OTA Upgrade (If Equipped)

1.1.Confirmation of Upgrade Preconditions

1. To download an upgrade package, network connection (4G or Wi-Fi) is required.
2. Throughout the entire upgrade process, it is necessary to park the vehicle in a safe area and engage the handbrake to ensure vehicle safety.
3. Throughout the entire upgrade process, it is recommended not to operate the IVI and keep the OTA upgrade interface at the forefront.

1.2.Network Setting

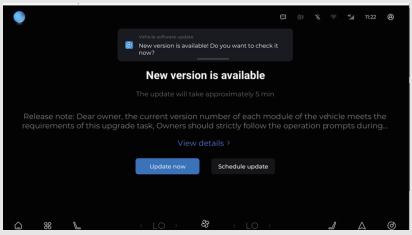


OMT28-2120

For vehicles that are already activated, download the installation package using either a 4G or Wi-Fi. For vehicles that are not yet activated, a Wi-Fi connection is necessary. The steps for Wi-Fi setup are as follows：

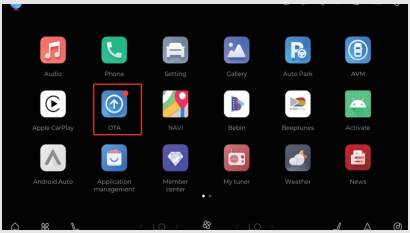
Method for Entering Vehicle Upgrade

Two ways to access the main interface for "Vehicle Upgrades" are as follows:



OMT28-2122

Method 1: When there is a new version upgrade available, and the vehicle is turned off (in the OFF gear), you will be able to see the "-System update" as shown in the following image. Click on "Check" to access the vehicle upgrade interface.

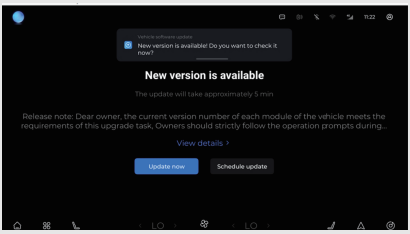


OMT28-2121

Method 2: Swipe the display screen to locate the "OTA" app, then tap to enter the vehicle upgrade main interface.

Introduction of Upgrade Mode

The upgrade mode includes immediate upgrade and scheduled upgrade modes. Upon entering the vehicle upgrade main interface, you will find two operation buttons:



OMT28-2122

"Upgrade now" for immediate upgrade and "Schedule upgrade" for scheduling. You can choose between immediate and scheduled upgrades.

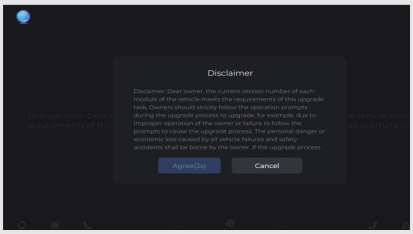
Upgrade Process Operation

Operation of Upgrade Now

1. Upgrade Now.

   Click on "Upgrade Now" button, upgrade the vehicle immediately.

2. Disclaimer Terms Interface.

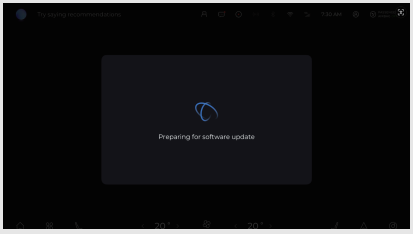


OMT28-2123

After clicking "Upgrade Now,"you will be directed to a disclaimer clause page, informing the vehicle owner about the upgrade terms and statements. The "Agree - 30 seconds" button will be grayed out, and it will become highlighted as "-Agree" when the 30-second countdown ends, as shown in the image below. Clicking "Agree" means you agree to the terms and proceed to the next step. Clicking "Cancel" will close the pop-up window.

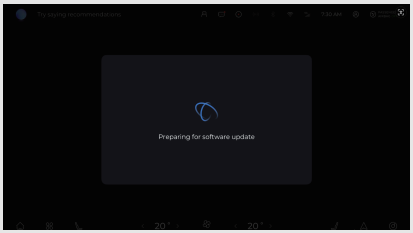
3. Vehicle Status OFF Check.

   After clicking agree to disclaimer clause check the vehicle status.



OMT28-2124

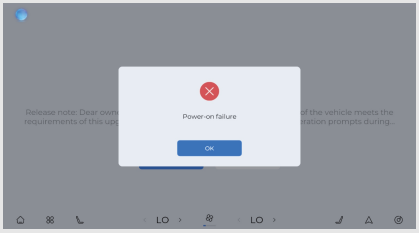
■ When the vehicle is in OFF gear, it will enter the vehicle upgrade preparation interface.



OMT28-2124

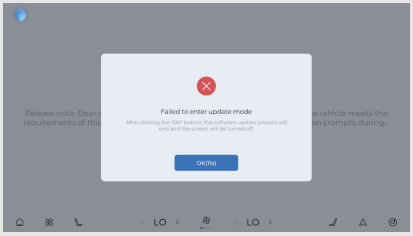
■ When the vehicle is in the ON gear, a pop-up message appears, instructing the user to "Please turn off the vehicle." A countdown timer of 120 seconds is displayed on this interface, waiting for the vehicle owner to turn off the ignition. If the owner turns off the vehicle within the specified time, it proceeds to the upgrade preparation phase. Otherwise, when the countdown timer reaches zero or if the user actively clicks

4. OTA Upgrade Mode



OMT28-2125

The vehicle needs to be in the OFF gear, and OTA will attempt to switch the vehicle to the ON gear. If attempting to start the vehicle in the ON gear fails, a "Power-on failure" notification will appear. Clicking the "OK" button will dismiss the dialog box. If you do not click "OK", the "Power-on failure" notification will reappear the next time the vehicle is powered on.



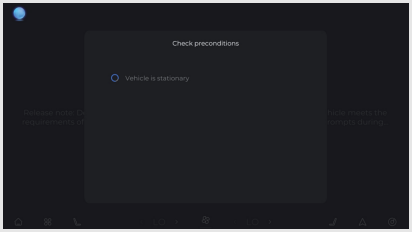
OMT28-2141

After the vehicle successfully starts in the ON gear, it will enter the OTA upgrade mode. If entering the OTA upgrade mode fails, the vehicle will automatically power down to the OFF position. Clicking "Ensure" button will dismiss the dialog. If "Ensure" is not clicked, the next time the vehicle is powered on, the failed to enter upgrade mode prompt will reappear.

Please note： In OTA mode, the following functions are disabled: one-key start switch, windshield wiper and washer functions, interior light control, exterior light control, air conditioning control, instrument screen, etc.

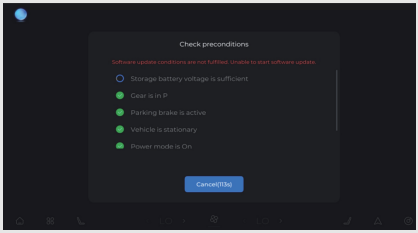
5. Upgrade Precondition Detection Interface

After successfully entering OTA upgrade mode, access the pre-upgrade condition detection interface.



OMT28-2142

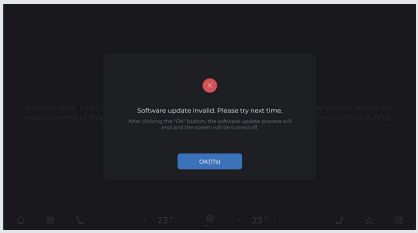
■ The status of passing precondition checks is as shown in the following image.



OMT28-2126

■ When the required vehicle conditions for the upgrade are met, it will automatically proceed to the next step. If the vehicle is detected as not meeting the preconditions, a notification window will pop up, as shown in the following image. Please follow the instructions to ensure the vehicle meets the upgrade requirements.

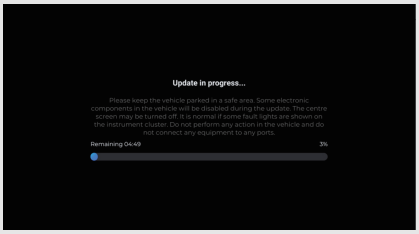
6. Task Validity Check



OMT28-2127

Before starting the OTA software update, it queries the OTA server to check if the upgrade task for this session has become invalid. If it's found to be invalid, the system reports the task's invalid status and prompts that the upgrade task is no longer valid, please upgrade again next time. If it is successful, the system proceeds with the upgrade installation.

7. Upgrade Installation



OMT28-2128

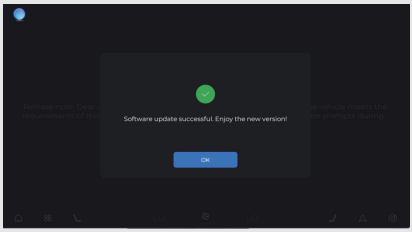
After successfully entering the upgrade mode, the next step is to enter the upgrade progress interface as shown in the following image. Please wait for the upgrade to complete.

Note: During the upgrade of the instrument panel and multimedia, there may be a reboot process, which is normal.

8. Upgrade Result

After the upgrade is completed, an upgrade result will be displayed, with the following three possible outcomes.

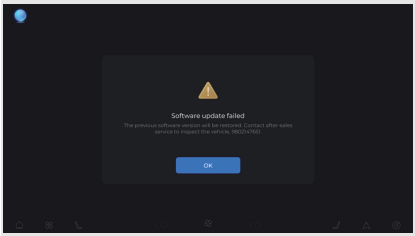
■ Upgrade Successful



OMT28-2143

When all the controllers have been successfully upgraded, a success message will appear. Follow the instructions as shown in the following image. Click "Ensure" to return to the vehicle upgrade main interface.

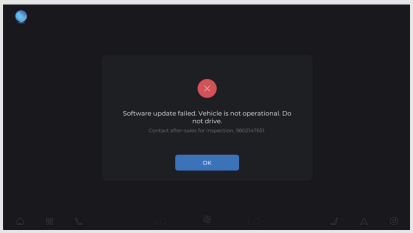
■Upgrade Not Completed



OMT28-2144

When a controller upgrade fails and the rollback is unsuccessful, a notification of upgrade failure will appear. Follow the instructions as shown in the image below. Click "-Ensure" to return to the vehicle upgrade interface。

■Upgrade Failed



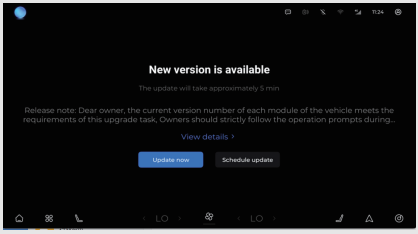
OMT28-2145

When a controller upgrade fails and the rollback is unsuccessful, an error message will prompt "Upgrade failed."

Follow the instructions as shown in the diagram below. Click "Ensure" to return to the vehicle upgrade main interface.

Schedule Upgrade

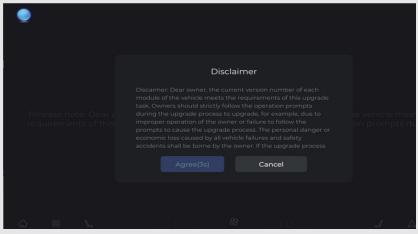
1. Enter Scheduled Upgrade



OMT28-2129

After entering the vehicle upgrade main interface, when presented with the options of "Upgrade Now" and "-Schedule Upgrade," it indicates that you can either immediately upgrade the vehicle or schedule an upgrade. Here, we will guide you through the process of scheduling an upgrade. Click on "Schedule Upgrade" as shown in the following image.

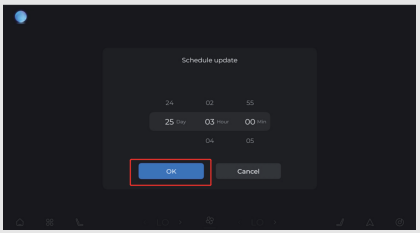
2. Upgrade Terms and Declarations



OMT28-2130

After clicking on "Schedule Upgrade," you will be directed to the Disclaimer Terms page, informing the vehicle owner of the upgrade terms and declarations. The "Agree (30 seconds)" button is initially grayed out and becomes highlighted as "-Agree" when the 30-second countdown expires, as shown in the following image. Clicking the "Agree" button signifies acceptance of the terms and proceeds to the next step. Clicking the "Cancel" button will dismiss the dialog.

3. Set Scheduled Upgrade Time



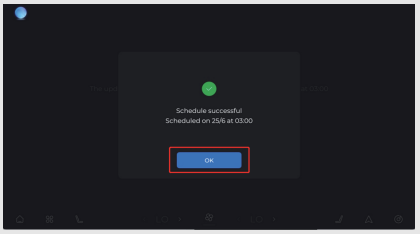
OMT28-2131

After clicking "Ensure," you will enter the scheduled time setting window. In the first column, choose the date; in the second column, select the hour, and in the third column, select the minute. Scheduled upgrades support setting appointment times within the next 24 hours.

After selecting the time, click on "Ensure."

4. Appointment Result Notification

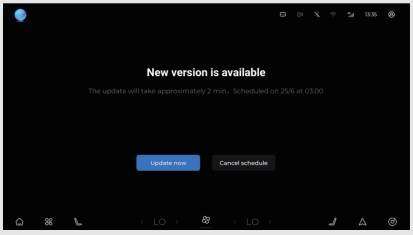
After clicking "Ensure," the system will provide a notification of the appointment result.



OMT28-2132

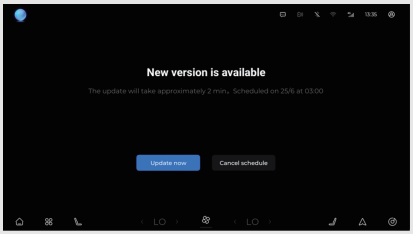
■ Appointment successful

After successfully setting the appointment time, a confirmation dialog will appear as shown in the following image. Click "Ensure" to finish.



OMT28-2146

■ After clicking "Ensure," return to the main interface, and you will be able to see the scheduled appointment time. After setting the appointment time and confirming the success, please power off the vehicle (use the one-key start button to power off), exit the vehicle, and lock all four doors, placing the vehicle in a dormant state.

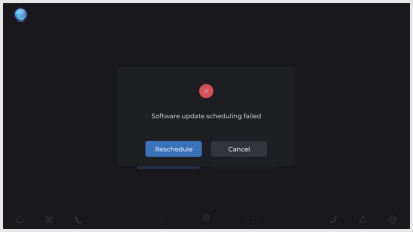


OMT28-2146

■ To cancel the current upgrade reservation, click "Cancel" to return to the vehicle upgrade main interface, and the current reservation will be canceled.

If you want to upgrade the vehicle immediately, click "Upgrade Now."

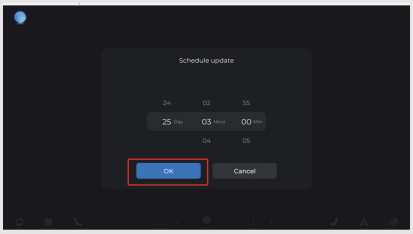
If you want to reschedule the upgrade time, click "Reschedule Update" to set a new appointment time.



OMT28-2147

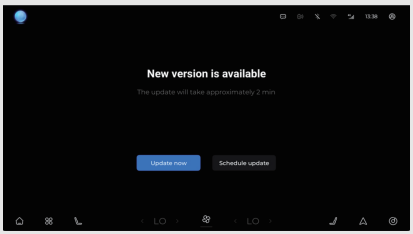
■ Reservation Failed

If the scheduled upgrade time is not successfully set, it will prompt a reservation failure



OMT28-2148

■ Click on "Reschedule" to enter the appointment upgrade time setting interface. After selecting the time, as shown in the following picture, click "Ensure."

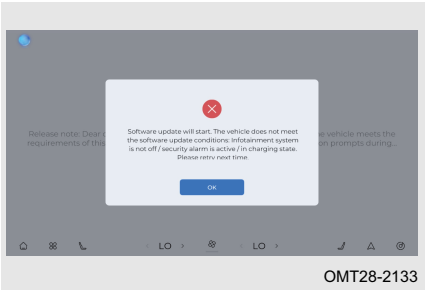


OMT28-2149

■ If you click on "Cancel," the current pop-up for setting the scheduled upgrade time will be closed, and you will return to the interface below this pop-up, as shown in the following diagram.

5. Detecting Upgrade Prerequisites

After the scheduled time arrives, the vehicle is awakened, and pre-upgrade prerequisite checks are performed.



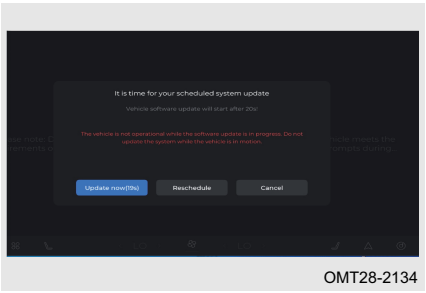
OMT28-2133

■ If the vehicle is in the OFF gear and in the anti-theft state, it will automatically enter the upgrade mode. If the pre-upgrade prerequisites are not met, it will exit the upgrade process, and the upgrade prompt will appear again after the vehicle is restarted.

■ If the vehicle is not in the OFF gear or not in the anti-theft state, the scheduled upgrade will be canceled, and the prompt will appear as shown in the figure below. If you need to use the vehicle, please click "OK"

If you need to reschedule the upgrade time, please click "-Reschedule," and set a new scheduled upgrade time.

6. The Vehicle Enters Upgrade Mode



OMT28-2134

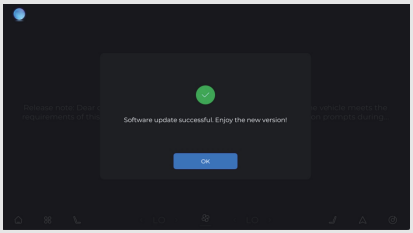
After the scheduled time and when the vehicle status meets the upgrade conditions, the vehicle enters upgrade mode, and the user cannot drive or use the vehicle.

7. Upgrade Installation

After detecting and satisfying the upgrade prerequisites, the upgrade will be initiated automatically. The vehicle cannot be used during the upgrade process.

8. Upgrade Result Notification

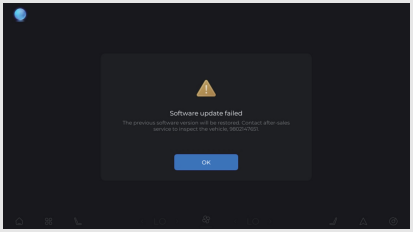
After the upgrade is complete, a popup will display the upgrade result, which can be one of the following three outcomes.



OMT28-2150

■ Upgrade Successful.

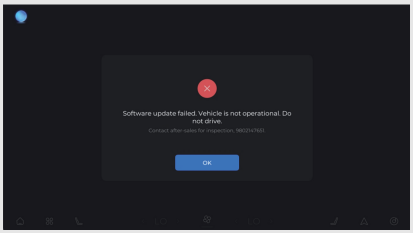
When all controllers are successfully upgraded, a success message will be displayed.



OMT28-2151

■ Upgrade Incomplete.

When a controller upgrade fails and a successful rollback occurs, a notification of incomplete upgrade will be displayed.



OMT28-2152

■ Upgrade Failed.

When a controller upgrade fails and the rollback also fails, a notification of upgrade failure will be displayed.

Countermeasures for Abnormal Problems during Upgrading

When other abnormalities occur, follow the steps below:

1. Turn off the vehicle.
2. Ensure that personnel and keys are away from the car.
3. Car door is locked.
4. Wait for 15 minutes.
5. Restart the vehicle and initiate the OTA upgrade again.

If the issue remains unresolved or the OTA upgrade fails, please contact the after-sales service to arrange a vehicle inspection.

3-10. Remote Control System (if equipped)

Remote Control System (if equipped)

User can remotely view the vehicle status (including lock status, engine status, window status, moon roof status, back door status, tyre temperature and pressure, remaining fuel, etc.) on their mobile phone APP, and remotely control the vehicle to improve driving efficiency, monitoring and protection of the vehicle.

> READ
>
> For details about activation and usage of vehicle control function, refer to electronic manual in mobile APP, or contact authorized service station.

> ⚠ CAUTION
>
> Due to product version upgrade or other reasons, the information company will update or revise the contents herein from time to time without prior notice. Please make sure that you refer to the latest version before using the product.

Introduction

Compilation purpose

This document includes an introduction of the operations of vehicle control functions.

Scope of application

This document is applicable to End C users.

Operation environment

Host and hardware equipment

Introduction of Product Functions

User registration

■ Registration with mobile phone (MP) number

Open the vehicle control APP and click the "Profile" tab at the page bottom. The following interface will display when user logs in for the first time:

The page will jump to the APP operating interface automatically upon the account creation.

Vehicle binding and vehicle control activation

It includes the following operations:

Add a vehicle

After logging in, click the "Vehicle " tab, and then click "Owner verification".

Or click the "Me" tab enter "My car" menu and click the "Owner verification" button.

Click and enter vehicle information on the pop-up page, such as VIN, engine number, license plate number, etc.

Click and enter vehicle information on the pop-up page, such as VIN, engine number, license plate number, etc.

Click "SUBMIT FOR AUTHENTICATION" to add a vehicle. If the vehicle information has been subject to maintenance in the system, after the data verification is completed, it will prompt "Successfully bound vehicle", otherwise "Owner certification record does not exist" will display, please carefully check whether the VIN and engine number are matching.

Activate vehicle control function

For users who have activated the vehicle control function for the first time, click on the "Car" page and then the "Car Control" page to enter the vehicle remote control interface.

Click "Activate" to activate the car control function

View vehicle status

Select a vehicle

In case of several available vehicles at the same time, click the vehicle card and click "DEFAULT VEHICLE" to view the vehicle status.

View vehicle status

On the Vehicle page,users can see the remaining range of the vehicle.

Remote vehicle control

It includes the following operations:

Remote unlock/lock

If the initial state of the car lock is locked, clicking once will unlock the car, and clicking again will lock the car.

Remote window open/half-open/close

If the initial state of the window is closed, click once to make the window half open, click again to make the window fully open, and click again to make the window closed. Cycle in sequence.

Remote trunk/tail door open

If the initial state of the trunk is closed, clicking once will open the trunk, and clicking again will close the trunk.

Searching for cars

Click the finding button, and the vehicle will sound its horn and flash its lights. After a certain period of time, it will turn off.

Remote A/C ON

The remote A/C ON function sub-interface provides the following adjustment options[2]:

A/C temperature/duration adjustment

Click the A/C icon on the vehicle condition/vehicle control page. In the A/C sub-interface, you can adjust the A/C temperature and execution time by sliding.

After selecting the A/C temperature and ON duration, Click on the switch button and select "ON", the A/C will be turned on. Click the "OFF", the A/C will be turned off.

Heating/ventilation adjustment

In the A/C sub-interface, the seat heating or ventilation function can be adjusted. By clicking the icons on the virtual vehicle, the sub-functions of steering wheel heating, windshield heating, seat heating and seat ventilation can be realized.

Click the corresponding icons again, the sub-functions of steering wheel heating, windshield heating, seat heating and seat ventilation will be turned off.

Air purification/Defrost

In the A/C sub-interface, click "AIR PURIFICATION"/"DEFROST" to turn on the corresponding functions.

Click the corresponding icons again, the "AIR PURIFICATION"/"-DEFROST" function will be turned off.

One-button heating regulation

In the A/C sub-interface, click "ONE-BUTTON HEATING". At this time, the one-button heating function is activated, and all the heating-related functions on the vehicle are activated.

The user may select the one-button heating function to make the vehicle reach the set temperature quickly. Click "ONE-BUTTON HEATING" again to turn off the function.

READ

- Please note that the specific adjustment options and functions may vary subject to different vehicle models or configurations.
- Please note that the availability of specific functions may depend on the model and configuration of the vehicle. When using the remote control function, please ensure that the vehicle is in a safe environment and observe the local traffic laws and regulations.

Energy Cnter

The percentage of remaining charge and range are displayed above the car image, the car rendering is green when the charge is >20% and red when the charge is below 20%.

Appointment charging starts from 00:00-23:45 with a 15 minute interval cycle. Appointment charging initial is 08:00-14:00, end time default is plus 6 hours.

Departure time allows for all moments throughout the day and Monday to Sunday selection. After clicking on the booking date, the cycle selected is cycled.

Tyre Monitoring

In the "Tyre monitoring" module, the air pressure and temperature of all four tyres are displayed, and abnormal tyre pressure data will be marked in red as a reminder.

Map service

It includes the following operations:

Flashing lights and whistling

You may click "FLASHING LIGHTS AND WHISTLING" either in the vehicle remote control function sub-item "VEHICLE SEARCH" or in the map service function sub-item.

After confirmation, the lights will flash and whistle to help the user find the vehicle quickly.

Vehicle positioning

You may click on "Vehicle Location" or the car icon on the map in the Map Services function sub-item.

After this function is activated, the user may determine the vehicle location through the vehicle icon on the map.

Navigate to vehicle

Click "MAP SERVICE" to enter the function sub-item, and click "NAVIGATE TO VEHICLE".

At this time, the APP will wake up the third-party navigation system (google map/Here We Go).

After entering the third-party navigation system, the user's current location and the current vehicle location will be taken as the starting point of navigation, and the user may use the navigation function to plan the best route in order to reach the location of the vehicle.

Electronic fence

It usually provides the following operations:

■ View the set electronic fence information

Click "MAP SERVICE" to enter the function sub-item, and then click "-ELECTRONIC FENCE" button.

The use may browse the created electronic fence and view its name, notification conditions, shape and size, etc.

■ Add a new electronic fence

Click "ADD A FENCE" to add a new electronic fence.

The use may choose to mark the fence location on the map and set its name, notification conditions, shape and size.

■ POI information query

In the map interface, you may query POI (point of interest) information.

The user may search for specific locations or types, such as banks, gas stations and parking lots, etc.

Click "SEND TO VEHICLE" after searching out the address, the APP will send the displayed POI information to the vehicle end, and proceed navigation in the vehicle navigation system.

READ

These map service functions can help users easily locate vehicles, plan navigation routes, set up electronic fences and inquiry surrounding POI information. Please note that the availability of specific functions may depend on the versions and regions of the vehicle control APP.

Binding authorization

The user may search for specific locations or types, such as banks, gas stations and parking lots, etc

It usually includes the following operations:

Add user authorization

Click on the Settings icon in the top right corner and "PRIVACY SETTINGS" will appear in the list.

Click "REMOTE ACCESS OVERVIEW" on the corresponding vehicle.

Click "Add remote authorization", and enter the name, MP number, effective time and invalid time of authorization, vehicle control password (irrelevant to the original vehicle control) and limit of authority of the authorized person on the pop-up page.

The authorizer can set the authorized person's range of right to use the vehicle, including basic permissions, remote control and vehicle positioning.

- If granted basic permissions, the authorized user may view the vehicle condition.
- If granted remote control, the authorized user may control the vehicle remotely.
- If granted vehicle positioning, the authorized user may use the related functions in the map service.

Edit user authorization

On the setting or authorization management page of the vehicle control APP, the user may choose to edit the user authorization.

Users may select the existing authorized users to edit and modify their related information or permission range.

Delete authorization

On the setting or authorization management page of the vehicle control APP, the user may choose to delete the user authorization.

Users may select to delete the existing authorized users and confirm the deletion operation.

READ

Through the binding authorization function, the owner can conveniently manage and control the authorization permission of the vehicle. He/she may add a new authorization, provide the information and permission range of the authorized person; or he/she may edit the existing user authorization and modify its information or authority; and he/she may also delete user authorizations that are no longer needed. In this way, the owner can flexibly authorize others to use the vehicle and manage and adjust as needed. Please note that the availability of specific functions may depend on the versions and regions of the vehicle control APP.

Account cancellation

Enter the "MY" function page.

Click "ACCOUNT SETTING" on the interface.

Select account cancellation

Select "DELETE ACCOUNT" on the account setting page.

Confirm cancellation

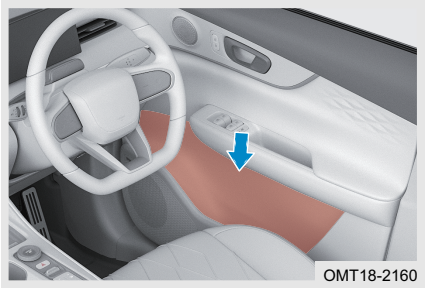
Confirm account cancellation operation.

Note: Cancelling the account will clear all account-related data, which cannot be recovered. Please be careful.

3-11. Storage Space

Storage Space

Door storage boxes


OMT18-2160

Storage boxes on front and the second row doors can be used for storing maps, cups and others items.

Glove box


OMT18-2161

Glove box is used to store map, instructions and other items.

Pull the glove box handle to unlock the glove box.

> ⚠ WARNING
>
> Before driving, make sure that the glove box is closed in place. Otherwise in case of emergency braking or emergency steering, it may cause accidents and serious injury or even death.

Armrest box


OMT18-2162

Armrest box is used to store maps, instructions and other items.

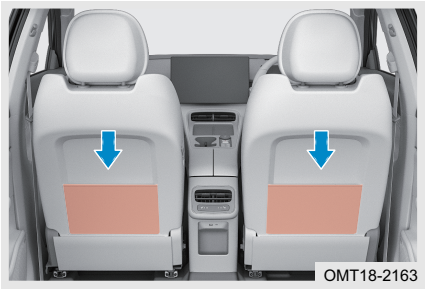
Press armrest box button to unlock the auxiliary fascia console armrest box.

> ⚠ WARNING
>
> - Adults or children are not allowed to sit on armrest box.
> - Armrest box must be closed when the vehicle is running, and the opening armrest box may hinder the driver’ s arm movement to prevent injury.

Middle cup holder

Central cup holder is located on the armrest of second row of seats. It can be used by turning down the armrest. When not in use, please return the armrest to its original position.

Seat storage bag


OMT18-2163

Front seatbacks are both equipped with storage bags on backside, which are used to store documents, instruction etc.

Luggage compartment


OMT18-2164

To enlarge space for stowing luggage, the rear seats can be folded when no passenger is in rear seats.

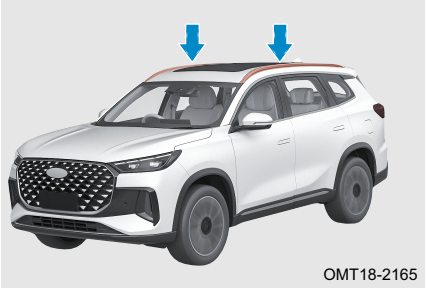
■ When stowing luggage in the vehicle, observe the following precautions:

1. Be careful to keep the vehicle balanced.
2. For better fuel economy, do not stow unneeded items.
3. Make sure that the stowing items are not oversize to prevent the luggage compartment from closing properly.

⚠ WARNING

- Do not drive the vehicle with the back door open or not closed, to prevent items from being thrown out to cause personal injury.
- Do not allow anyone to sit in the luggage compartment. The passengers should sit in their seats with their seat belts properly fastened. Otherwise, they may be seriously injured in event of sudden braking or a collision.
- Do not stack goods or luggage higher than seatback. Keep them low, as close to the floor as possible to prevent them sliding forward in event of braking, causing personal injury.

Carrier


OMT18-2165

Roof carrier is used for loading cargo. Be sure that the total weight of the loading cargo on the carrier or loading tool (such as luggage compartment, cross rod)

⚠ CAUTION

- Never allow the loaded long or wide cargoes to exceed the overall length or width of the vehicle.
- Overweight will cause carrier, moon roof glass, body roof and other components to be damaged, the various problems caused by overweight are not under the warranty.
- Before driving, make sure the cargo is securely attached to the roof carrier. Blankets or other protection items can be placed between the cargo and the roof. Be careful not to scratch the roof surface.

⚠ WARNING

- Apply loads evenly. Improper loading may cause deterioration of steering or braking control, which may cause serious injury or even death.
- Loading cargo on carrier will raise the vehicle center of gravity. Avoid high speeds, sudden starts, sharp turns, sudden braking or abrupt maneuvers, otherwise it may result in loss of control or vehicle rollover due to failure to operate vehicle.

3-12. USB Port

Front USB


OMT18-2170

Front USB is located on the lower part of auxiliary fascia console (as shown in the illustration).

Type-A port: It can be used for reading U disc, phone connect and charging the electrical equipment with low power, such as phone etc.

Type-C port: It can be used for charging the electrical equipment with low power, such as phone etc.

Rear USB


OMT18-2171

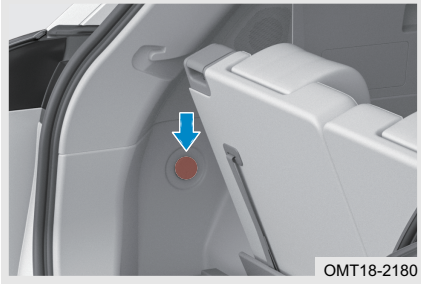
Rear USB is located at the rear of center armrest box (as shown in the illustration).

Type-A port: It can be used for charging the electrical equipment with low power, such as phone etc.

Type-C port: It can be used for charging the electrical equipment with low power, such as phone etc.

3-13. Backup Power Supply (12 V)

Rear Backup Power Supply


OMT18-2180

The rear backup power supply is located on the left side of luggage compartment (as shown in the illustration).

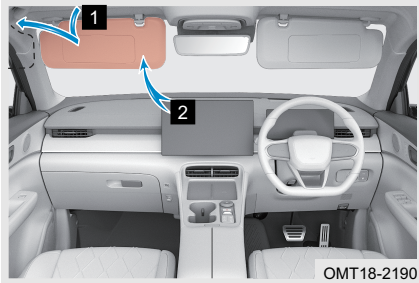
Backup power supply can be used only when vehicle power is switched to ACC/ON mode.

⚠ CAUTION

- To prevent the battery from depleting, do not use backup power supply longer than necessary.
- To prevent the fuse from being blown, do not use electrical equipment with high power (120 W or more).
- Do not insert anything or allow any liquid to get into the backup power supply other than an appropriate plug. Failure to do so may cause electrical failure or short circuits.

3-14. Sun Visors and Vanity Mirrors

Sun Visors and Vanity Mirrors



OMT18-2190

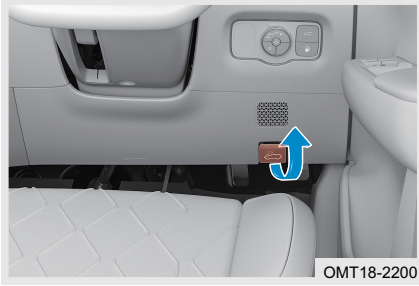
Flip the sun visor down and move the vanity mirror slid board parallel to use the vanity mirror, and the corresponding vanity mirror light (if equipped) comes on.

1 Flip the sun visor down.

2 Detach the hook and turn it outward to shade the sidelight.

3-15. Front Compartment Cover

Opening/Closing Front Compartment Cover


OMT18-2200

Step 1: The hood will spring up slightly when the hood release lever is pulled twice;

Step 2: Lift the hood up and lift and support the hood under action of the air spring;

Step 3: Lower the hood and close it until the latch is locked;

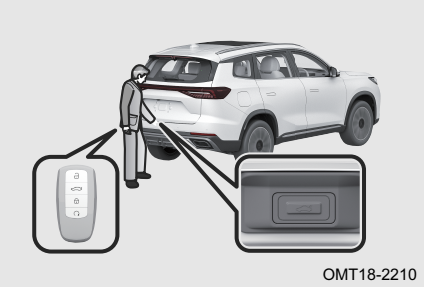
Step 4: After closing the hood, lift the hood lightly to check that hood is fully closed.

CAUTION

- Before closing the front compartment cover, check if you have not left any tools, rags etc. in the front compartment.
- When closing the front compartment cover, do not press it by hand, otherwise it may be deformed.
- Make sure that front compartment cover is closed before driving, otherwise accidents and personal injury may be caused.

3-16. Back Door

Manual Back Door


OMT18-2210

Method 1: With central lock unlocked, approach the back of vehicle, press exterior switch on the back door and lift up to open the back door.

Method 2: With central lock locked, approach to back of vehicle while carrying smart key on your person, press back door exterior switch and lift up to open back door.

READ

When the central lock is locked, please unlock the central lock first, and then open it with back door exterior switch.

WARNING

Make sure that the back door is closed before driving, otherwise, accidents and damage to related parts may be caused.

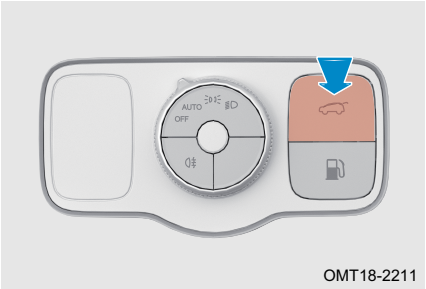
Power Back Door (If Equipped)

For your convenience, power back door can be opened/closed in various ways (such as driver door switch, back door exterior switch, back door interior switch, smart key remote control and voice opening/closing back door), also achieve height adjustment function, let you fully feel the convenience of power back door.

Smart key remote control

While vehicle power is switched to OFF mode, long press back door opener button on smart key and power back door will be open/closed.

Driver door switch

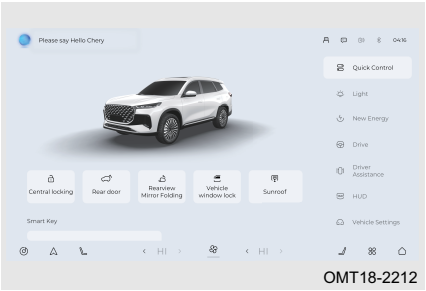


OMT18-2211

With central lock unlocked, long press "" button, turn signal lights will come on and power back door will be opened/closed.

When the power back door is moving, press " " button to suspend the action.

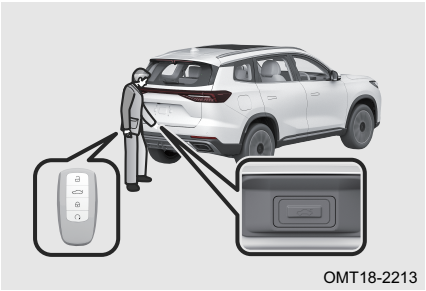
Quick control



OMT18-2212

When the vehicle is powered on, click " " button through Audio System - Settings - Quick Control to turn on/off back door.

Back door exterior switch



OMT18-2213

Method 1: With central lock unlocked, approach the back of vehicle and press exterior switch on the back door, turn signal lights will come on and power back door will be opened/closed.

Method 2: With central lock locked, approach to back of vehicle while carrying smart key on your person and press back door exterior switch, turn signal lights will come on and power back door will be opened/closed.

READ
When the central lock is locked, please unlock the central lock first, and then open it with back door exterior switch.

Back door interior switch

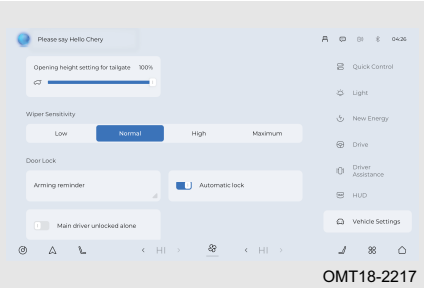


OMT18-2214

With the power back door open, press "" button to close the power back door.

When the power back door is moving, press " " button to suspend the action.

Back door opening height



OMT18-2217

When the vehicle is powered on, slide and adjust the Opening height setting for tailgate through Audio System - Settings - Vehicle Settings.



OMT18-2218

After the power back door is opened, adjust it to your desire height; long press "" button until the vehicle gives a light prompt, and the power back door opening height is set successfully.

READ

- For details about voice recognition function, refer to "Audio System" section.
- If the back door opening height is too low or too high, the back door opening height cannot be set.
- When any switch (such as power back door switch, power back door button, back door open button) is activated during the movement of the power back door, the back door will stop moving.

⚠ CAUTION

- When the back door is abnormal, please go to authorized service centre for inspection and repair as soon as possible.
- When the power back door opens, do not pull electric support rod laterally, which may cause damage to related parts.
- Before driving, make sure that the back door is closed properly, otherwise it may cause accidents and damage to related parts.
- Before opening the power back door, be sure to note that there should be nothing in the opening range, which could result in scratching the back door.
- When closing the back door, make sure that nobody will be caught. If closing is interrupted, close it again.
- When the power back door is opened to the highest position, it cannot be pushed or supported by hand to higher place, as this may cause damage to related parts.
- When closing power back door by hand, please operate gently. Never operate with brute force, failure to do so may cause damage to motor and module.
- When going uphill or downhill, due to change in the center of gravity, the power back door may not open or close. This is normal. Open or close it by hand.
- If the battery cable is disconnected and reconnected, the power back door needs to be manually closed to locked position at a constant speed, and then press the power back door switch to open/close the power back door normally.

⚠ WARNING

Make sure that the back door is closed before driving, otherwise, accidents and damage to related parts may be caused.

Power back door jam protection function

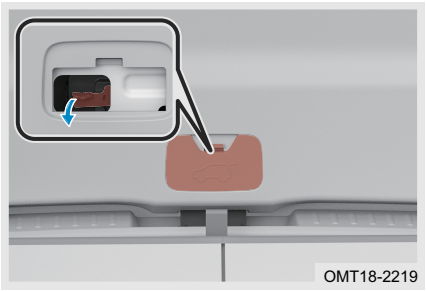
Positive jam protection: When power back door is opening, if it encounters resistance (such as wall, obstacle), the back door positive jam protection works to avoid vehicle damage.

Reverse jam protection: When power back door is closing, if it encounters resistance (such as children, luggage), the back door reverse jam protection works to avoid child injury and vehicle damage.

⚠ WARNING

Although the power back door is equipped with jam protection function, do not activate jam protection function on purpose to avoid accidental injury.

Back Door Emergency Opening


OMT18-2219

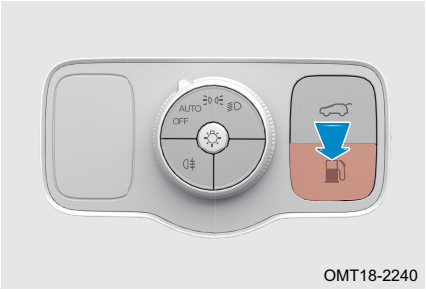
Back door cannot be opened when battery is depleted or under similar conditions. In this case, the back door can be opened with back door stand-by device switch (stop the vehicle as safely as possible if condition permits).

Step 1: Fold the rear seatback;

Step 2: Get in the rear of vehicle and open stand-by device cover;

Step 3: Press down the stand-by device switch with hand, release it, and then push the back door to open it.

3-17. Fuel Tank Cap



OMT18-2240

Step 1: Switch vehicle to power off state, long press " " button and instrument cluster displays "It is ready to refuel, please refuel" message, and fuel tank cap is unlocked after pressure relief is completed;


OMT18-2241

Step 2: After fuel tank cap is unlocked, push fuel tank cap, it will pop up;



Step 3: Turn the fuel filler door counterclockwise;

Step 4: After refueling, turn fuel filler cap clockwise until a "click" sound is heard.

Step 5: Turn fuel tank cap to correct position and press to close it.

READ

- After the fuel tank cap is closed, it will be locked again within 30 seconds.
- After fuel tank cap unlocks, if it is not opened within 10 minutes, the cap will lock again.
- Fuel may pollute environment. Therefore, the sprayed fuel should be collected and disposed by a professional.

CAUTION

- Never add diesel to fuel tank.
- After fuel filler cap is tightened firmly, loose your hand and the cap will turn slightly in the opposite direction. This is normal.
- To prevent damage to the cap, apply force only in the direction of rotation. Do not pull or pry the cap.
- A slight whooshing sound may be heard when the fuel tank cap is opened, this is normal.
- When freezing at low temperature, after the vehicle arming is deactivated, tap fuel tank cap and then fuel tank cap opens. It is normal phenomenon.
- If fuel overflows during refueling, wipe it off immediately to avoid damage to vehicle paint surface.
- During driving, if fuel tank cap is not closed, drive vehicle to a safe area and stop it, then close the cap again.
- If the vehicle arming is not deactivated, never push fuel tank cap with a strong force as this may cause damage related components of fuel tank cap.

⚠ WARNING

- If the fuel filler door is not tightened in place, it may cause the engine malfunction light comes on.
- Do not inhale vaporized fuel, as the fuel contains substances that are harmful for the health.
- Before refueling, switch vehicle to power off state and close all doors and windows.
- Make sure that the fuel filler door is tightened securely, to prevent accident caused by fuel spillage.
- Do not attempt to continue to refuel after the fuel gun is automatically turned off! Otherwise, the fuel tank may be too full, causing fuel to overflow from the fuel tank, which can easily cause fire, explosion and serious injury.
- Do not remove the fuel filler door quickly when opening it. In hot weather, if cap is removed suddenly, high-pressed fuel vapor may be ejected from the filler neck and cause personal injury.
- After exiting the vehicle and before opening the fuel tank cap, touch an unpainted metal surface to discharge any static electricity. It is important to discharge static electricity before refueling, because sparks resulting from static electricity can cause fuel vapors to ignite while refueling.
- Because gasoline is extremely flammable, smoking and phone calls are prohibited in the gas centre area, and there must be no other sparks or open flames.

4-1. Vehicle Power Mode

Inspection and Preparation Before Driving..... 150

Vehicle Power-on 150

Vehicle Power-off 151

4-2. Steering System

Electric Power Steering System (EPS)..... 152

4-3. Brake System

Electric Parking Brake System (EPB)..... 153

Auto Hold System (AUTO HOLD)..... 156

Foot Brake 157

4-4. Transmission

Automatic Transmission 159

Column Shift Switch 160

4-5. Airbag

Airbag 162

4-1. Vehicle Power Mode

Inspection and Preparation Before Driving

Step 1: Check surroundings of vehicle before getting in;

Step 2: Adjust seat angle, head restraint height and steering wheel angle;

Step 3: Adjust angles of the inside and outside rear view mirrors;

Step 4: Fasten the seat belts;

Step 5: Confirm that the parking brake is applied and gear position is in P;

Step 6: With vehicle powered on, check if malfunction indicator and other indicators on meter are normal; if they are abnormal, please contact authorized service centre for inspection and repair immediately;

Step 7: Carry smart key on your person or put it in vehicle, so that it can be detected normally; Depress brake pedal to start vehicle, and "READY" green indicator on instrument cluster remains on.

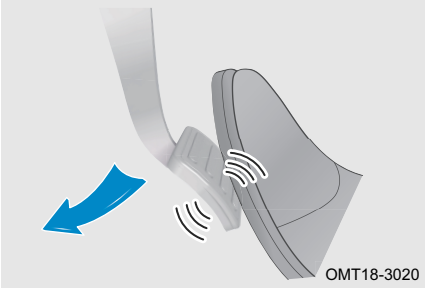
Vehicle Power-on

Normal power-on

The driver performs door unlocking operation, opens the driver door, and the vehicle is automatically powered on.

> ⚠ CAUTION
>
> After vehicle is powered on, do not use electrical appliances of vehicle for a long period of time. When low battery is prompted, charge in time or use engine to charge by starting vehicle, otherwise the vehicle may not start due to power battery loss. When vehicle fails to start due to serious loss of power battery, it can be restarted by connecting the charging gun for charging. If it still cannot be started, please contact authorized service station.

Normal starting



With vehicle powered on, carry the smart key on your person and enter the vehicle, depress brake pedal to start vehicle, and "READY" green indicator on instrument cluster remains on.

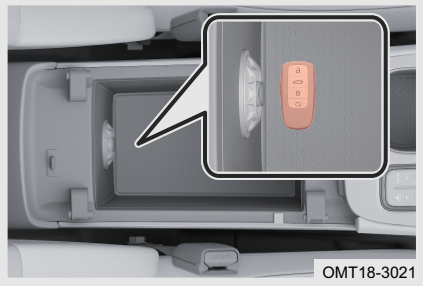
READ

When vehicle is in READY state, the motor is silent, make sure that the shift lever is shifted to P before leaving or locking vehicle.

The vehicle is equipped with an alcohol lock, which needs to be installed afafter-sales authonzed service station.

Starting in emergency

When smart key battery is low or signal is seriously interfered, the vehicle cannot be started. Start according to following steps:


OMT18-3021

Lay smart key in auxiliary fascia console storage box with front side facing up (as shown in figure), depress brake pedal to start vehicle, and "READY" green indicator on instrument cluster remains on.

CAUTION

- Avoid engine idling for a long time as much as possible.
- Do not run cold engine at high speed or under high load (It is normal that the engine runs at high speed when the power battery of vehicle is depleted and vehicle is started in Sport mode).

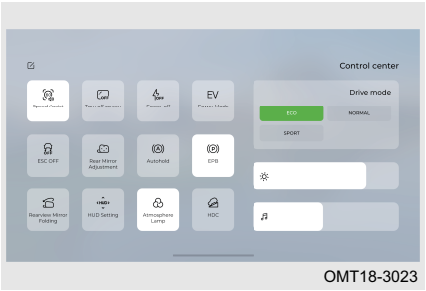
Vehicle Power-off

Normal power-off


OMT18-3022

Method 1: With vehicle powered on, driver seat not occupied, four doors closed, and gear position in P, perform vehicle locking operation, and the vehicle is powered off.

Method 2: With vehicle in READY state, driver door open, driver seat not occupied, gear position in P, turn the vehicle to power-on state, close the four doors, and perform vehicle locking operation, the vehicle is powered off.



OMT18-3023

Method 3: With vehicle powered on or in READY state, gear position in P, click " OFF " button on quick menu, the vehicle is powered off. The next time the driver uses vehicle, it is not possible to automatically power on the vehicle, directly depress brake pedal to start vehicle, and " READY " green indicator on instrument cluster remains on.

Automatic power-off

With vehicle powered on, driver seat not occupied, four doors closed, and gear position in P, the vehicle is powered off automatically after parking for 90 minutes.

⚠ WARNING

- Do not touch high temperature components (such as engine, exhaust pipe, radiator) immediately after engine has just stopped, otherwise, burns may occur.
- It is forbidden to park on dry leaves, hay or other flammable materials or allow the vehicle to idle for a long time. When engine is running or the vehicle is just stopped, high temperature of exhaust pipe may cause fire.

4-2. Steering System

Electric Power Steering System (EPS)

Electric power steering system uses torque generated by motor as power source of steering system, instead of assisting method using in general vehicle, that is, hydraulic pump is driven by engine.

Electric power steering system self-learning

After the vehicle battery is powered off and reconnecting or starting vehicle, due to the initialization of electric steering system angle, " " yellow indicator on instrument cluster blinks, turn the steering wheel left and right to the limit position to complete the angle reset, and the " " yellow indicator on instrument cluster turns off.

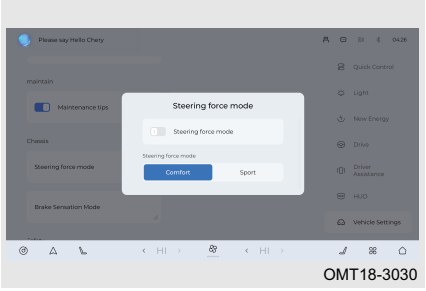
> ⚠ CAUTION
>
> - Frequent handling and rotation of steering wheel over long periods of time may damage the mechanism in EPS system.
> - It is forbidden to turn the steering wheel left and right frequently and quickly at idle speed to prevent the system from overheating. If the system is overheating, heavy steering will occur, which is normal. Stop rotating the steering wheel and switch the vehicle power to OFF/ACC mode until the system cools down.

Electric power steering system indicator

When there is a fault, "" red indicator on instrument cluster remains on.

> ⚠ WARNING
>
> After EPS system is disabled, although the vehicle still has the conventional steering capability, it should be driven with caution. Please go to the authorized service centre for inspection and repair as soon as possible.

Steering power mode



OMT18-3030

When the vehicle is powered on, and turn on steering force mode through Audio System - Settings - Vehicle Settings; Steering force mode (Mid/Sport) can be set separately after turning off.

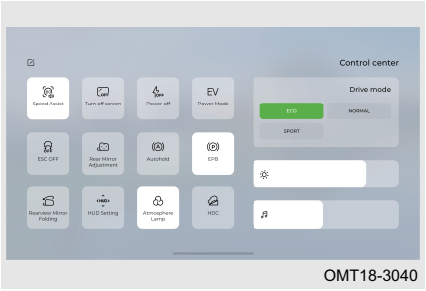
4-3. Brake System

Electric Parking Brake System (EPB)

Introduction

Electric Parking Brake System (EPB) is a technology that integrates temporary braking during driving and long-time braking after stopping, and implements parking brake by electronic control. This technology replaces the traditional handbrake.

Usage methods



OMT18-3040

EPB operation conditions

Vehicle is in READY state, driver seat belt is fastened, driver door is closed, and brake pedal is depressed.

EPB ON

When EPB conditions are met, click "Ⓟ" button in control center, and "Ⓟ" red indicator on instrument cluster remains on, indicating that EPB function has been turned on.

EPB function is automatically applied when the vehicle is powered off or the shift lever is shifted to P.

EPB OFF

When EPB is turned on, click "Ⓟ" button in control center, and "Ⓟ" red indicator on instrument cluster goes off, indicating that EPB function has been turned off.

Releasing parking brake automatically

With vehicle stopped on level ground, driver seat belt fastened and driver door closed, when the shift lever is shifted from P to D or R, the EPB is released automatically, and "Ⓟ" red indicator on instrument cluster goes off.

With vehicle stopped on a slope, driver seat belt fastened and driver door closed, when the shift lever is shifted from P to D or R, depress accelerator pedal deeply, and parking brake can be released automatically only when driving force is greater than slipping force.

READ
When towing vehicle, it is necessary to release parking brake, and the shift lever needs to be shifted into N.

⚠ CAUTION

- EPB and AUTO HOLD cannot be used when vehicle battery (12 V) is depleted. Jumper cables can be used to start.
- While depressing brake pedal for releasing or applying parking brake, brake pedal may push slightly up or down, just depress the brake tightly.
- When performing automatic releasing of electric parking brake, fasten the driver's seat belt and close the driver door. Failure to do so may cause the automatic releasing conditions of parking brake cannot be satisfied.
- When enabling and releasing electric parking brake, "whooshing" sound may be heard from rear part of vehicle. This is the working sound emitted by parking brake and is normal.
- If vehicle coasts after stopping within a short period of time, system will increase parking brake force automatically to hold it for safety. When parking brake force is increasing, system makes operation sound. This is normal.

⚠ WARNING

To avoid accidental vehicle movement, when stopping or leaving the vehicle, after EPB system operates, the "Ⓟ" red indicator on instrument cluster will go off automatically after coming on for a certain period of time, in this case, check if "Ⓟ" red indicator on instrument cluster remains on to ensure that electric parking brake is applied.

Emergency braking function

If foot brake fails, pull up the electric parking brake button continuously to forcibly apply brake by parking brake. In this process, "Ⓟ" red indicator in instrument cluster blinks. Release the button to exit emergency braking.

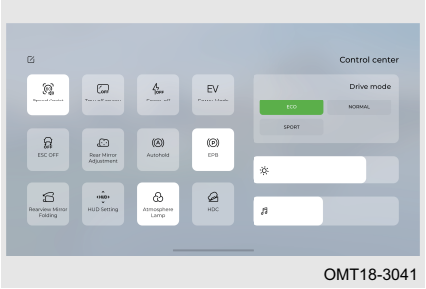
⚠ WARNING

- Use this function cautiously during normal driving. When driving, passengers should not touch button accidentally. Otherwise, it may cause an accident.
- When emergency braking function is activated, it will drone. This is normal.
- When applying emergency braking, electric parking brake will apply brake at constant deceleration which is deviated from driver's desired deceleration and braking distance will be different.
- When foot brake fails or brake pedal is blocked, emergency braking function can be used in an emergency. ESP system and its components cannot exceed road traction physical limit, turning on emergency braking function when driving on curved road, dangerous road, heavy traffic road or in severe weather may lead in drifting, side-slipping or pulling over, be careful not to cause an accident.

Auto Hold System (AUTO HOLD)

Auto hold system is used to prevent vehicle from rolling when vehicle is stationary and starts off.

Usage methods



OMT18-3041

Auto hold operation conditions

After vehicle starts, driver seat belt is fastened, driver door is closed.

Turning on auto hold function

When the vehicle is powered on, the control center screen can be displayed by sliding the screen down in the audio screen. When auto hold conditions are met, click " Ⓐ " button to turn on the auto hold function, and " Ⓐ " white indicator on instrument cluster remains on.

Activating auto hold function

When auto hold function is turned on, depress brake pedal, the gear position is in D and changes to stationary state from movement, auto hold function is activated and "Ⓐ" green indicator on instrument cluster remains on.

Depress brake pedal when vehicle is stationary, and the auto hold function is turned on at the same time and the condition of auto hold is met, then auto hold function is activated, "Ⓐ" green indicator on instrument cluster remains on.

Turning off auto hold function

When auto hold function is turned on, click " Ⓐ " button on control center screen to turn off the auto hold function, " Ⓐ " white indicator on instrument cluster turns off.

When auto hold function is activated, click " Ⓐ " button on control center screen to turn off the auto hold function, " Ⓐ " green indicator on the instrument cluster goes off, indicating that vehicle has exited auto hold function and switched to parking brake function.

Auto hold release function

Way to release auto hold is the same as that of electric parking brake, including manual release and automatic release.

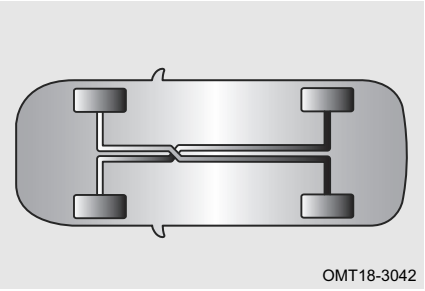
⚠ CAUTION

- Turn off auto hold function before driving into car wash.
- The auto hold function can only be activated when vehicle is in D gear and cannot be activated when vehicle is in R gear.
- Always park vehicle correctly according to safety regulations and take care to avoid hurt yourself and pedestrians.
- If accelerator pedal is depressed very slowly, auto release of auto hold delays. This is normal.
- When auto hold function is activated, open driver door or unfasten driver seat belt, auto hold will switch to parking brake function.
- When auto hold function is enabled, open driver door or unfasten driver side seat belt to exit auto hold function, close the driver door or fasten the seat belt again to activate the auto hold function again.
- After auto hold function is enabled, the auto hold system will automatically park the vehicle after the vehicle comes to a complete stop from motion state by foot brake, but the gear position is still in D. It is recommended to shift to N for a short time parking and shift to P for a long time parking.

⚠ WARNING

To avoid vehicle accidentally moving, in the state of auto hold, confirm the shift position before you depressing accelerator pedal to start.

Foot Brake



OMT18-3042

The brake system adopts X type arrangement, double circuit brake system; The system is a hydraulic system with two independent subsystems. If one of the subsystems fails, the other system can still perform brake function. However, brake pedal depressing force will be greater than usual as well as the braking distance, and the brake system malfunction indicator remains on.

⚠ WARNING

Do not drive vehicle under conditions in which only one brake system works. Please contact the authorized service centre as soon as possible.

Brake system indicator

When there is a fault, "(!)" red indicator on instrument cluster remains on.

⚠ WARNING
When there is a fault in brake system, check the brake fluid level, add brake fluid when the level is lower than MIN line. If reason is unclear, please contact the authorized service centre immediately.

Precautions for brake system

1. If there is continuous shudder or vibration being transferred to the steering wheel during braking, please contact the authorized service centre immediately for inspection and repair.
2. When driving downhill, shift to a low gear to make full use of engine braking effect and avoid continuous use of brakes. Failure to do so may cause the brakes to overheat and braking distance will become longer, and the brakes may even temporarily lose its effectiveness in a serious case.
3. The brake system will make some noises sometimes during operation, which is normal, but if you hear metal friction or a whistling sounds over a period of time, the brake linings may be seriously worn. Please contact the authorized service centre for replacement immediately.
4. The new brake linings must be break-in to reach optimal brake effect. Braking effect in the first 124 miles (200 km) is not optimal. In this case, depress brake pedal more firmly to compensate braking effect.
5. A wet brake may cause abnormal vehicle deceleration or pulling to one side when braking. Depress brake pedal slightly to test effectiveness of brakes. After driving through deep water, keep a safe vehicle speed and depress brake pedal slightly until braking function is restored.
6. Wear condition of brake lining depends largely on its working conditions and driving style. For vehicles mainly used in city traffic, frequent starting and stopping will make working condition of brake lining worsen. Therefore, please go to authorized service centre according to specified maintenance mileage to check thickness of brake linings or replace it as needed.

4-4. Transmission

Automatic Transmission

The automatic transmission belongs to the electronically controlled automatic transmission.



Fully depress brake pedal and shift the shift lever to D; Release the parking brake manually or automatically and release the brake pedal, and then drive the vehicle slowly.

⚠ WARNING

- Never tow the vehicle for a long distance or at high speed. Raise drive wheels or disconnect propeller shaft when towing.
- When shift lever is in N, make sure parking brake is applied or brake pedal is depressed, otherwise an accident may occur.

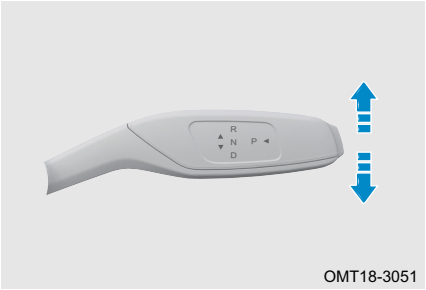
Fail-safe mode

When malfunction occurs in transmission system, fail-safe mode will be automatically activated, at the same time " " yellow indicator on instrument cluster remains on; transmission cannot operate normally, and vehicle will slow down and be driven at low speed.

⚠ CAUTION

Long distance driving is not allowed in fail-safe mode. Otherwise, transmission will be damaged, please contact authorized service centre for inspection and repair immediately.

Column Shift Switch



P gear: When the vehicle is stationary, depress the brake pedal and the shift lever is not in P. Press the button on the right side of column shift switch to shift the shift lever to P.

R gear: When the vehicle is stationary, depress brake pedal, move up to the top and shift the shift lever to R.

D gear: When the vehicle is stationary, depress brake pedal, move down to the bottom and shift the shift lever to D.

N gear: When the vehicle is stationary, depress brake pedal and shift the shift lever to N by following operations.

1. When the gear position is in D/P, push up column shift once to shift to N.
2. When the gear position is in R, push down column shift once to shift to N.

Gear position introduction

Gear Position	Function
P gear	Park position. The vehicle can be started.
R gear	Reverse position. Back-up lights will come on and parking assist system will operate.
N gear	Neutral position. It is used for short time idling stop.
D gear	Forward driving position. Automatically shifts up and down among forward drive gears according to engine load and vehicle speed.

⚠ CAUTION

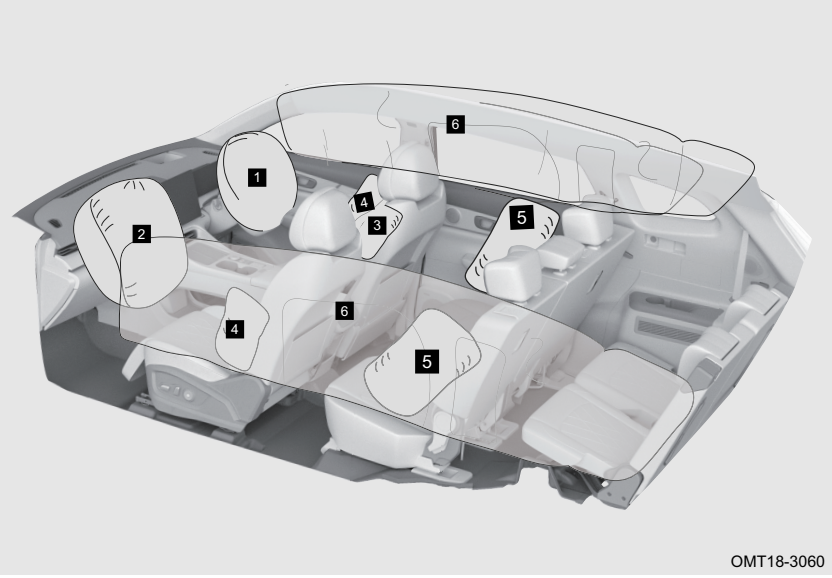
- Do not coast vehicle in N. Otherwise, the transmission will be damaged.
- Never shift in P position when the vehicle is not stopped steadily. This may lead to abnormal sound or damage to the transmission.
- Do not shift the shift lever out of D while the vehicle is moving forward. Otherwise, the transmission may be damaged seriously.
- Do not shift the shift lever out of R while the vehicle is moving backward. Otherwise, the transmission may be damaged seriously.
- When shifting the shift lever out of P, it is necessary to depress the brake pedal first to stop the vehicle steadily, and then perform shifting among each gear position. Otherwise shifting mechanism will be damaged.
- When vehicle malfunctions occur due to insufficient battery, even depressing the brake pedal, shifting out of P is impossible, please contact the authorized service centre immediately for inspection and repair.
- When the vehicle is parked on a slope, the parking brake must be applied first, and then the shift lever is shifted into P. After starting on a slope, first shift the shift lever out of P, then release parking brake for driving.

4-5. Airbag

Airbag

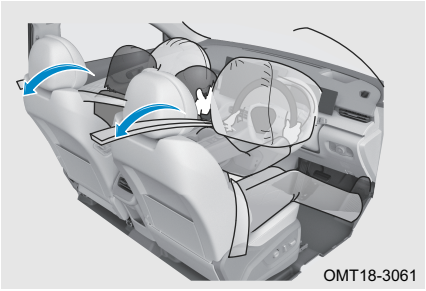
In severe frontal/side collision, the airbags deploy and work together with seat belts to protect occupants in vehicle. Automatically unlock doors, illuminate interior lights, and turn on hazard light after the airbag is deployed.

Airbag position

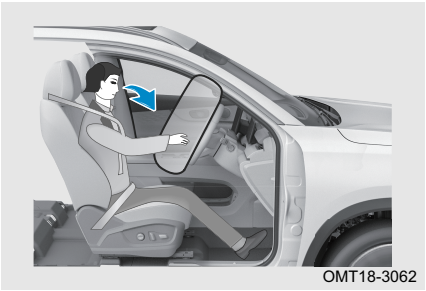


1 Driver Frontal Airbag	2 Front Passenger Frontal Airbag	3 Center Airbag
4 Front Seat Side Airbag	5 Second Row Seat Side Airbag (If Equipped)	6 Curtain Side Airbag

Using airbag correctly


OMT18-3061

In an event of a severe frontal collision, driver frontal airbag, front passenger frontal airbag and driver knee airbag (if equipped) work together with seat belts to help reduce injuries to the head or chest of driver and front passenger caused by hitting the interior component. (Front passenger frontal airbag may be activated even if there is no occupant in the front passenger seat).


OMT18-3062

The airbag will deploy only when the collision degree of vehicle reaches the design condition. In some collisions, seat belts are the only protective device. Wearing a seat belt during a collision can help reduce the risk of hitting objects inside the vehicle or being thrown out of the vehicle, and effectively protect the driver and occupants. Therefore, all people in vehicle should wear seat belts correctly. Airbags and seat belts can provide protection only for adults, they are not designed to protect infants and young children.

The airbag will generate considerable force at the moment of deployment. In order to avoid injury caused by deployment of the airbag, the driver and occupants must adopt the correct sitting posture, correctly wear the seat belt and adjust their seat position, never get too close to the airbag (such as sitting on the edge of the seat or tilting the body forward). For vehicles equipped with front seat side airbag and curtain shield side airbag (if equipped), ensure that the upper limbs are at a sufficient distance from the side of the vehicle to avoid injury during deployment.

⚠ CAUTION

- The related parts of airbag will generate heat after deploying. Do not touch the related parts of airbag immediately to avoid injury.
- The airbag is a non-reusable device. Once the airbag is deployed, the related parts of airbag must be replaced.
- If the areas where the airbags are stored (such as the steering wheel and instrument panel) are damaged or cracked, please go to the authorized service centre for replacement as soon as possible.
- The deployment and contraction of the airbag is completed in a short period of time, and cannot protect against the impact of a second impact that may occur subsequently.
- The airbag is neither designed for rear collision, slight frontal collision, nor for vehicle rolling over, and it does not work when the vehicle is braked in an emergency.
- The airbags release some smoke and dust after deploying. For people with asthma or other respiratory problems, respiratory system could be stimulated. Therefore, all people in vehicle should get out as soon as possible, or open windows to breathe fresh air and seek medical treatment if necessary.

⚠ WARNING

- The seat cover should not block side airbag (if equipped) during using, as in the event of an accident, the side airbag (if equipped) will not pop up after inflating, which will reduce protection for passengers.
- A soft, dry cloth or cloth dampened with water must be used to clean the airbag area. Avoid any fluid entering into the airbag, otherwise it may seriously affect the normal function of airbag.
- If there is water in vehicle, the airbag may be damaged. Even if there is no collision at this time, it may cause the airbag to deploy accidentally. Turn off the engine immediately and disconnect the negative battery cable. Do not try to start the engine. Please contact authorized service centre for inspection and repair immediately.

Airbag indicator

The "  " red indicator on instrument cluster remains on when it is malfunctioning, which is used to alert the driver that airbag is malfunctioning. Please go to the authorized service centre for inspection and repair as soon as possible.

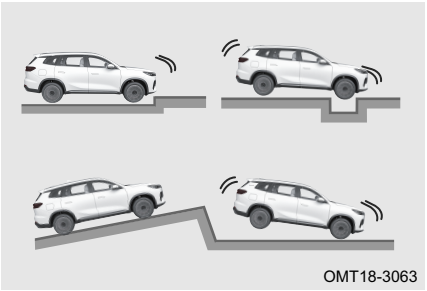
Airbag operating conditions

Deployment conditions of the airbag do not depend on driving speed of vehicle, but depend on the object, collision direction and vehicle deceleration conditions due to a collision. Airbags may be not deployed when impact of

collision is absorbed or dispersed into the body; However, the airbag can sometimes operate depending on the impact condition in an accident. Therefore, deployment conditions of the airbag should not be judged according to the damaged condition of the vehicle.

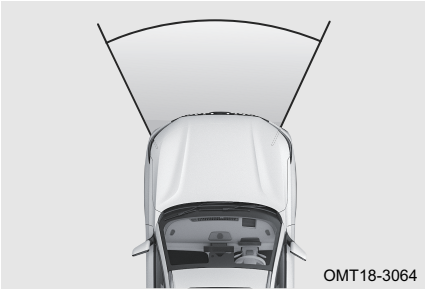
Even if the airbag is not deployed, a collision may damage the airbag in the vehicle. Airbag may not operate properly if damaged, and it will not be able to protect you and other occupants in the event of another collision, resulting in accidents and personal injuries. In order to ensure that the airbag can be deployed properly in an event of collision, please go to the authorized service centre for inspection and repair as soon as possible.

■ Conditions under which airbag may deploy other than a collision



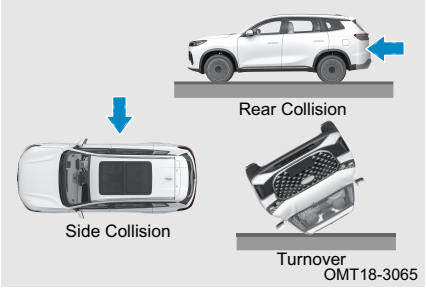
The driver frontal airbag, front passenger frontal airbag, driver knee airbag (if equipped) may deploy if an impact occurs to the underside of your vehicle.

■ Conditions under which airbag may deploy in a collision

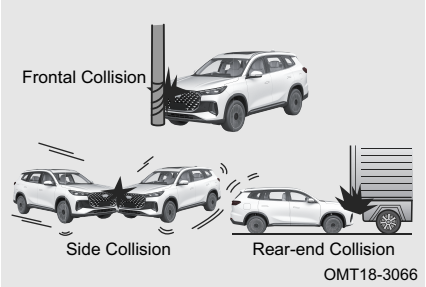


Operating conditions: In general, in an event of frontal collision, the driver frontal airbag, front passenger frontal airbag and driver knee airbag (if equipped) may deploy if the deceleration of vehicle exceeds the designed threshold level.

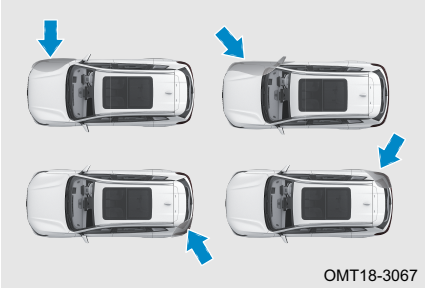
■ Conditions under which airbag may not deploy during a collision



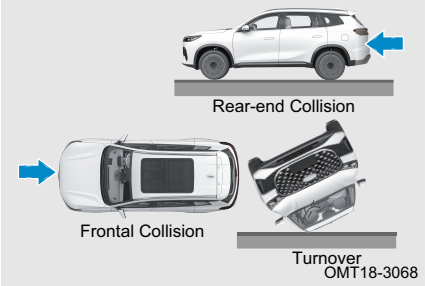
The driver frontal airbag, front passenger frontal airbag and driver knee airbag (if equipped) may not deploy if the vehicle is involved in a side or rear collision, if it rolls over, or if it is involved in a low-speed frontal collision.



The driver frontal airbag, front passenger frontal airbag and driver knee airbag (if equipped) may not deploy if the front of vehicle hits a telegraph pole, goes under a truck, or inclined side collision.



The front seat side airbag, curtain side airbag (if equipped) and center airbag (if equipped) may not deploy if the vehicle is subjected to a collision from side, the rear part of the rear tyre or a side collision at certain angles to the vehicle.

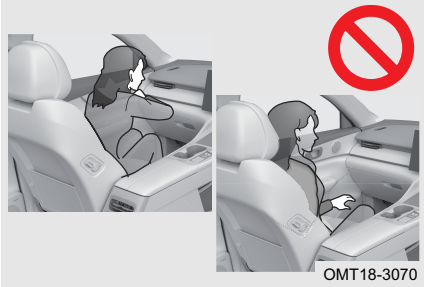


The front seat side airbag, curtain side airbag (if equipped) and center airbag (if equipped) may not deploy if the vehicle is subjected to a front or rear collision, turnover or low speed side collision.

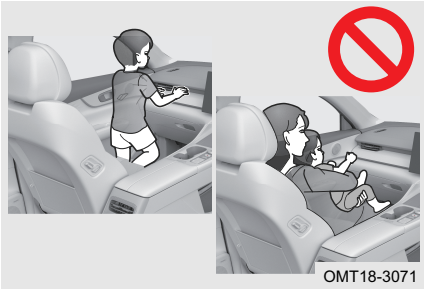
Precautions for airbag



There should be no objects on deployment path of airbag. It is forbidden to place anything (such as mobile phone, etc.) between the occupant and the airbag. Never fix or place any object on or near the airbag cover. If there is an object between occupant and airbag, the airbag may not deploy according to designed path, or the airbag may push object into occupant’s body, causing serious injury or even death.



Do not sit on the edge of the seat or lean against the instrument panel.

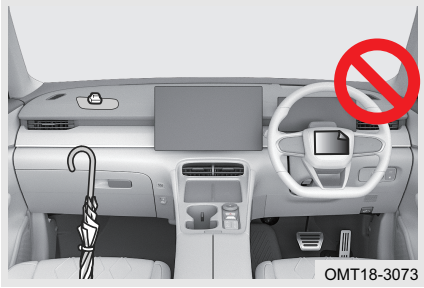


Do not allow a child to stand in front of the front passenger frontal airbag unit or sit on the knees of front passenger.

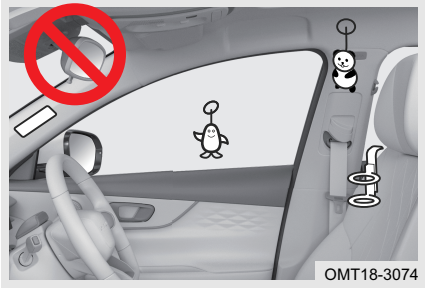


Do not lean against the door, A pillar, B pillar or C pillar.

Do not allow anyone to kneel on the passenger seat toward the door or put their heads or hands outside the vehicle.



Do not attach anything to or lean anything against the areas such as the instrument panel, steering wheel and lower portion of the instrument panel. These items may be thrown out when driver frontal airbag or front passenger frontal airbag deploys.



Do not attach anything to areas such as the door, windshield glass, side door glass, A pillar, B pillar, C pillar, roof side rail and assist grip.

Do not strike or apply excessive force to the area of airbag components. Otherwise, it may cause airbag malfunction.

Replacement of airbag components

The related parts of the airbag must be replaced 10 years from the date of vehicle purchase. In order to make sure that the airbag can ensure your safety, please always contact the authorized service centre to replace related parts of the airbag within the specified time.

Make sure that the new owner knows the airbag configuration and the replacement date of airbag in this vehicle when the vehicle is sold.

Modification and disposal of airbag components

Do not dispose of the vehicle or operate the following components without permission of the authorized service station, otherwise accidents and personal injuries may be caused:

1. Modification of vehicle suspension system.
2. Modification of vehicle front bumper, etc.
3. Modification of side doors or door protective panel and B-pillar protective panel, etc.
4. Installation, removal, disassembly and repair of airbags.
5. Repair, modification, removal or replacement of steering wheel, instrument cluster, instrument panel and seats.

5-1. Traffic Sign Recognition System (If Equipped)

Speed Limit Assist System (SLA) (If Equipped) 171

5-2. Speed Limit System

Cruise Control System (CCS) (If Equipped) 171

Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) System 173

Intelligent Speed Control System (If Equipped) 179

Active Speed Limit (ASL) (If Equipped)..... 180

5-3. Lane Assist System

Lane Assist System (If Equipped) 181

Lane Departure Warning (LDW) 181

Lane Departure Prevention (LDP) 183

Emergency Lane Keeping (ELK) 184

5-4. Lane Keep Assist System (LKA) (If Equipped)

Lane Keep Assist System (LKA) (If Equipped)..... 186

5-5. Blind Spot Detection Assist System

Blind Spot Detection Assist System (BSD) 187

Door Opening Warning (DOW) System 189

Rear Collision Warning (RCW) System (If Equipped) 190

Rear Cross Traffic Alert (-RCTA) System..... 190

5-6. Driving Safety Assist System

Head Up Display (HUD) (If Equipped)..... 190

Tyre Pressure Monitoring System (TPMS) 191

Automatic Emergency Braking (AEB) System/ Front Collision Warning (FCW) System..... 193

5-7. Intelligent Cruise Control System

Traffic Jam Assist (TJA) System /Integrated Cruise Assist (ICA) System..... 197

Intelligent Avoidance System (IES) (If Equipped) 201

5-8. Driver Monitoring System (DMS) (If Equipped)

Driver Monitoring System (DMS) (If Equipped)..... 201

5-9. Parking Assist System

Panoramic View Monitor System (AVM) 202

Parking Radar System 206

5-10. Braking Force Control System

Electronic Stability Control System 209

Hill Descent Control (HDC) System (if equipped)..... 210

Anti-lock Brake System (ABS) 211

Extended Function 213

5-11. Plug-in Hybrid Electric Vehicle System (PHEV)

Power Battery..... 214

New Energy 217

Energy Recovery Intensity..... 218

Operating Mode..... 219

Charging Device 224

Charging Operation..... 228

AC charging socket electronic lock..... 232

Releasing Charging Gun Manually (Only for AC Charging)..... 234

Charging Precautions 234

External Discharging 236

Low-speed Pedestrian Warning Sound..... 239

5-12. Data Privacy

Driver Drowsiness and Attention Warning (DDAW) 239

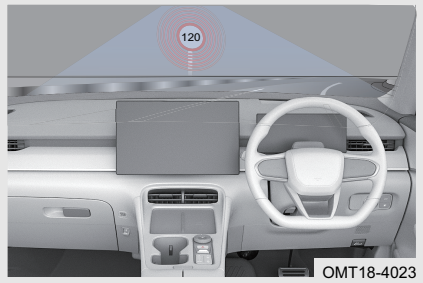
Advanced Driver Assistance System (ADAS)..... 239

Emergency call (eCall)..... 240

5-1. Traffic Sign Recognition System (If Equipped)

Speed Limit Assist System (SLA) (If Equipped)

SLA detects speed limit sign information on road ahead and combines the information with speed limit information of navigation system, and use the final speed limit information to remind the driver to pay attention to the various current road speed limit regulations in the form of image, sound, etc., to keep legal speed and observe local traffic laws.



After SLA detects speed limit sign information on road ahead and combines the information with speed limit information of navigation system, " ⊖ " indicator on instrument cluster comes on, if the speed exceeds current speed limit for 5 mph (5 km/h), speed limit value flashes, prompt sound will sound 1 time.

Function limit

■ SLA may not be able to recognize in following situations:

1. Faded signs.
2. Signs on curve.
3. Rotated or damaged signs.
4. High signs on highway.
5. Signs that is covered fully or partly, or that the position can not be found easily.
6. Signs covered by frost, snow, dust fully or partly.

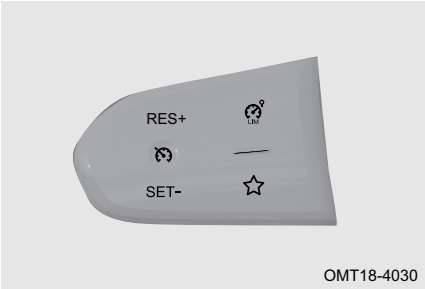
⚠ WARNING
SLA based on the function of front view multi-function camera is affected by weather and light, so the function is not appropriate for all conditions.

5-2. Speed Limit System

Cruise Control System (CCS) (If Equipped)

Cruise control system can maintain the speed set by driver.

Cruise control system button



Cruise button " ": Turn on/off cruise control system.

Active speed limit button " ": Turn on/off active speed limit.

"RES+" button: Resume cruise control system and adjust speed value.

" SET- " button: Set cruise control system, active speed limit and adjust speed value.

READ
" RES+ ", " SET- " button is shared button for cruise control system and active speed limit.

Usage methods

■ Entering cruise control system

Turn vehicle power to ON mode, press " " button to enter pre-cruising state, " " indicator on instrument cluster flashes; when vehicle speed is within 24 - 93 mph (40 - 150 km/h), press "SET-" button again to set current vehicle speed as cruise speed and enter cruising state, " " indicator on instrument cluster remains on.

■ Exiting cruise control system

Press " " button to exit cruising state, and " " indicator on instrument cluster goes off.

During cruising, press " " button to exit cruise function, and " " indicator on instrument cluster goes off; Enter pre-speed limit state, " " indicator on instrument cluster remains on.

Exit cruising state and enter pre-cruising state when brake pedal is depressed or sudden braking is applied during cruising, " " indicator on instrument cluster flashes. When vehicle speed is not lower than 24 mph (40 km/h), press " RES+ " button, vehicle accelerates until it returns to the cruise state before exiting cruising.

■ Speed setting

Short press " RES+ " button during cruising process, set vehicle speed will increase by 1 mph (1 km/h).

Long press " RES+ " button during cruising process, set vehicle speed will increase continuously.

Short press " SET- " button during cruising process, set vehicle speed will decrease by 1 mph (1 km/h).

Long press " SET- " button during cruising process, set vehicle speed will decrease continuously.

Function limit

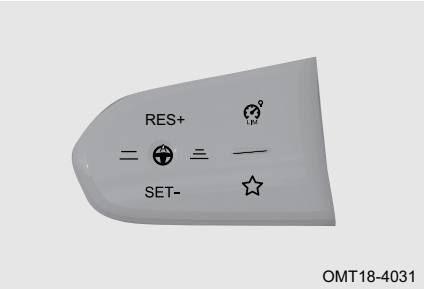
■ In the following conditions, do not use cruise control system, failure to do may cause an accident as well as injury and death.

1. During emergency towing.
2. In heavy traffic.
3. On winding roads.
4. On roads with sharp curves.
5. On slippery roads, such as roads covered with rain, ice or snow.
6. Vehicle speed may exceed set speed when driving up and down on a steep slope.

Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) System

Adaptive cruise control system can maintain the speed set by driver and can also follow the vehicle at a set safe distance.

Adaptive cruise control system buttons



Main button " ":

Activate/exit function: When ACC is in pre-cruising or cruising state, short press main button to activate/exit ACC;

Mode switching function: When ACC is in pre-cruising or cruising state, or TJA/ICA is in pre-activating or activated state, long press the main button to switch between ACC and TJA/ICA modes.

Active speed limit button " ": Turn on/off active speed limit.

"三": Following clearance increasing adjustment.

"二": Following clearance decreasing adjustment.

" RES+ " button: Resume the adaptive cruise control system and adjust speed value.

" SET- " button: Enter adaptive cruise control system, active speed limit and adjust speed value.

READ

"RES+","SET-" button is shared button for adaptive cruise control system and active speed limit.

Adaptive cruise control system activation conditions

The following conditions must be met at the same time to activate adaptive cruise control system:

1. Gear position is in D position.
2. Front compartment cover is not opened.
3. Active speed limit is not turned on.
4. Driver door is closed.
5. Driver seat belt is fastened.
6. Parking brake is not applied.
7. Anti-lock brake system is not activated.
8. Electronic stability program system is turned on.
9. Electronic stability program system is not activated.
10. Hill descent control system is not turned on.
11. Brake pedal is not depressed (during driving).
12. Vehicle speed is higher than 9 mph (15 km/h) or an object is recognized in front.

Usage methods

■ Enter adaptive cruise control system

When the vehicle is powered on. When the activation conditions are met, it will enter the pre-cruising state automatically. " " gray indicator on instrument cluster remains on;

Method 1: In pre-cruising state, when vehicle speed is higher than 9 mph (15 km/h), press "SET-" or " " button to set current speed as cruise speed and enter cruising state, " " blue indicator on instrument cluster remains on.

Method 2: In pre-cruising state, when vehicle recognizes the target ahead and vehicle speed is lower than 9 mph (15 km/h), press "SET-" or " " button to set 9 mph (15 km/h) as cruise speed and enter cruising state, " " blue indicator on instrument cluster remains on.

Method 3: In current ignition cycle, press "RES+" button after exiting ACC, set the last cruising set speed and enter cruising state, " " blue indicator on instrument cluster remains on.

READ

- ACC exits when turning on active speed limit.
- When there is a vehicle in front of your vehicle in the same lane, and driving speed is not higher than vehicle set speed, ACC system will control the vehicle to follow vehicle ahead.
- When there is no vehicle in front in the same lane, or there is a vehicle in front in the same lane and driving speed is higher than set speed, your vehicle will drive at the set speed.
- When applying parking brake and entering pre-cruising state, press "SET-" button, instrument cluster will prompt "Please depress accelerator pedal to activate adaptive cruise control system", driver depresses accelerator pedal slightly to activate ACC according to the prompt.

■ Exit adaptive cruise control

When one or more of the following situations occur in cruising process, ACC system will exit:

1. Front compartment cover is opened.
2. Depress brake pedal.
3. Press " " button.
4. Driver door is opened.
5. Driver seat belt is not fastened.
6. Apply electric parking.
7. Anti-lock brake system operates.
8. Gear position is in a position other than D.
9. Automatic emergency braking system operates.
10. Turn on HDC system.
11. Electronic stability program system operates.
12. Electronic stability control system is not turned on.
13. Driver depresses accelerator pedal for more than 15 minutes.

After the above conditions that cause the function to exit are resumed, press "RES+" button, enter cruising state and resume set state before exiting.

■ Speed setting

Short press "RES+" button during cruising process, set vehicle speed will increase by 1 mph (1 km/h).

Long press "RES+" button during cruising process, set vehicle speed will increase by 5 mph (5 km/h); when vehicle speed exceeds 49 mph (80 km/h), set vehicle speed will increase by 10 mph (10 km/h).

Short press "SET-" button during cruising process, set vehicle speed will decrease by 1 mph (1 km/h).

Long press " SET- " button during cruising process, set vehicle speed will decrease by 5 mph (5 km/h); when vehicle speed exceeds 49 mph (80 km/h), set vehicle speed will decrease by 10 mph (10 km/h).

READ

- For ACC system, the lowest speed setting is 9 mph (15 km/h) and the highest speed setting is 80 mph (130 km/h).
- Speed will be slightly lower than set speed when driving uphill, and will be slightly higher than set speed when driving downhill.
- When cruise system is activated, the driver depresses accelerator pedal to enter the overtaking mode. At this time, adjust the cruise speed by pressing "SET-" or "RES+" button. The logic of the cruise speed adjustment is consistent with that of the cruise activation.

Following clearance

Press " 二 "/" 三 " button in cruising process, adjust following clearance which is divided into 5 levels from minimum clearance to maximum clearance.

READ

- Following clearance changes based on speed and increases with speed improving.
- In minimum clearance mode, the distance between the vehicle and vehicle ahead will quite small during following at low speed. For safety, select maximum clearance mode to follow vehicle ahead on slippery road.
- During following vehicle ahead and decreasing, electronic stability program system continuously performs brake and motor will generate operation sound when rotating, this is normal and please drive at ease.

WARNING

- Please note that any drive behavior must confirm all traffic regulations.
- The driver must control vehicle and operate as needed during the whole driving process to avoid danger.

Overtaking

Depress accelerator pedal to exceed set speed in cruising process. After accelerator pedal is released, the control state will return to previous state. During overtaking, if the vehicle is too close to vehicle ahead, instrument cluster will pop up "Please take over the vehicle by driver" accompanied with urgent warning sound to remind driver to avoid.

READ

When cruise system is in the overtaking status, adjust the cruise speed by pressing "RES+" or "SET-" button. The logic of the cruise speed adjustment is consistent with that of the cruise activation.

Curve speed control

Decrease the speed when vehicle enters curve in cruising process, which help driver to drive through curve safely.

> ⚠ WARNING
>
> - The driver must control vehicle, drive through curve as slowly as possible in the whole driving process.
> - While entering a curve, due to limitation of detection target for sensor, vehicle ahead on the same driving route may not be detected in time, which requires the driver to be ready to take over the control of the vehicle at any time.

Stopping and starting function

During following vehicle ahead in ACC mode, vehicle ahead decreases to stop, the vehicle also decreases to stop, after stopping:

1. Vehicle ahead starts to drive away within 3 seconds and the vehicle starts automatically to follow vehicle ahead.
2. If vehicle ahead stops for more than 3 seconds and starts within 3 seconds to 10 minutes, driver needs to depress accelerator pedal slightly to activate ACC.
3. When vehicle stops within 10 minutes, driver unfastens seat belt or opens driver door, EPB will be activated automatically for parking.
4. When vehicle stops for more than 10 minutes, the ACC will exit, and EPB will be activated automatically for parking.

> ⚠ WARNING
>
> During following vehicle ahead, always pay attention to whether the instrument cluster displays the vehicle target in front. If the instrument cluster does not display the target in front, it means that target in front of ACC system has been lost, and the vehicle will start to accelerate according to set speed.

Precautions for adaptive cruise control

1. Adaptive cruise control system can not violate laws of physics and has certain limitations. Driver must always keep control of the vehicle and be fully responsible for the vehicle.
2. If the vehicle is extremely close to vehicle on adjacent lanes, adaptive cruise control system may select the vehicle as following target.
3. Adaptive cruise control system can not respond to stationary objects and vehicles, crosswise vehicles, oncoming vehicles, pedestrians, bicycles and animals.

4. When stopping vehicle briefly by adaptive cruise control system, driver must confirm that there are no obstacles or other traffic participants such as pedestrians, bicycles and animals in front of the vehicle.
5. When adaptive cruise control function is malfunctioning, "  " yellow indicator on instrument cluster remains on. At this time, adaptive cruise control function fails, please go to the authorized service centre for inspection and repair as soon as possible.
6. During adaptive cruise control controls vehicle, never inadvertently step on accelerator pedal, otherwise, adaptive cruise control will not apply brake to vehicle, driver should always be ready to brake actively to ensure the safety of the vehicle.
7. Adaptive cruise control system has a limited brake time reaction; if vehicle ahead occurs sudden brake, another driver cuts in front of the vehicle, the vehicle cuts behind a preceding vehicle, adaptive cruise control system may not respond or react to vehicle ahead too slow, in this case, driver should take over the vehicle control in time.
8. The distance to the vehicle ahead, adjacent lane conditions, and target type displayed on instrument cluster may be different from the actual situation. Driver must observe the vehicle and real road conditions in real time; Driver should adjust the proper distance from vehicle ahead and vehicle speed based on traffic flow, weather condition and other actual road conditions, and is responsible for ensuring that the vehicle can stop safely at any time. In inclement weather (rain, snow, fog, etc.), adaptive cruise control system may not recognize a vehicle ahead. In this case, adaptive cruise control system should be turned off.
9. Adaptive cruise control system is suitable for use on highways and roads in good condition. It is not recommended for use on urban roads, narrow roads, mountain roads, hills, tunnels, etc. If using adaptive cruise control system on curves, target vehicle ahead may be lost or target selection is delayed due to limitation of sensor detection range. In this case, adaptive cruise control system will control vehicle to accelerate to set speed.
10. During the process of following the vehicle ahead to stop, ACC system may not be able to recognize the end of the vehicle, but the lower or upper part of vehicle (such as rear axle of truck that has higher chassis, upper part of lower flatbed trailer). In these cases, system cannot ensure a proper stopping distance or even lead to collision. Therefore, driver must keep a watch on vehicle and be ready to take over vehicle control anytime during this process.
11. Camera sensor is installed behind windshield. Please note that view of sensor should not be covered by pollutants, and front or surrounding areas should not be modified. When sensor is completely covered by snow, ACC function will be exited. Sensors may also be affected by vibration or collision, and system performance may be reduced or its function fails. In

this case, please go to authorized service centre for recalibration of sensors as soon as possible.

Precautions mentioned above do not cover all circumstances that may affect system normal operation. System function may fail to bring the expected effect due to other reasons. Driver must always take full responsibility for vehicle control anytime.

Intelligent Speed Control System (If Equipped)

When the vehicle is in cruising state (ACC or TJA/ICA), Speed Control Function (SCF) system detects the speed limit sign information on the road ahead and integrates the speed limit information of navigation system. When pressing the DOWN button during speed limit prompt pop-up, speed limit value of Speed Limit Assist System (SLA) is used as the cruise target speed, cruise control state for the vehicle can improve safety and reduce the risk of speeding/penalty points, and reduce the burden on the driver.

READ

- Intelligent speed control system can be set in audio system. For details, refer to "Audio System".
- If the driver does not confirm during the first pop-up window, another popup will window appear after 1 minute; thereafter, no more pop-up window will be shown until the new speed limit sign appears (the new speed limit sign is not the same as the previous one).

CAUTION

Speed limit indicator system is only an assist driving function and cannot completely replace driver's vision. Blocked camera or radar, incorrect or missing speed limit information, complex road conditions and bad weather may affect the normal operation of this function. In any case, the driver should actively pay attention to their own vehicle speed and road speed limit, and control driving speed. The observation of which and compliance with remain ultimate responsibility of the driver.

■ Activation conditions of intelligent speed control system

The following conditions must be met at the same time to activate intelligent speed control system:

- SLA is turned on.
- 18 mph (30 km/h) $\leqslant$ Speed limit value of SLA $\leqslant$ 74 mph (120 km/h).
- The speed limit value of SLA is 12 mph (20 km/h) higher or lower than the cruising set speed of the vehicle.
- ACC is activated.
- Set speed of ACC $>$ Speed limit value of SLA.

Active Speed Limit (ASL) (If Equipped)

Driver drives vehicle at set limit speed.

Usage methods

■ Entering active speed limit

With vehicle in READY status, press " LIM " button to enter pre-speed limit state, " LIMIT --- km/h " indicator on instrument cluster remains on:

Method 1: During pre-speed limit state, vehicle speed is lower than 18 mph (30 km/h), press "SET-" button to enter speed limit state, " LIMIT ON 30km/h " indicator on instrument cluster remains on, set vehicle speed is 18 mph (30 km/h) by default;

Method 2: During pre-speed limit state, and vehicle speed is within 18 - 124 mph (30 - 200 km/h), press "SET-" button to set current speed as limit speed to enter speed limit state, " LIMIT ON 30km/h " indicator on instrument cluster remains on.

■ Exiting active speed limit

Press " " button to exit speed limit state, enter pre-cruising state, " CRUISE CANCEL --- km/h " indicator on instrument cluster flashes.

Press " LIM " button to exit speed limit state, " LIMIT ON 30km/h " indicator on instrument cluster goes off.

■ Speed setting

Short press "RES+" button during speed limit process, set vehicle speed will increase by 1 mph (1 km/h).

Long press "RES+" button during speed limit process, set vehicle speed will increase by 5 mph (5 km/h).

Short press "SET-" button during speed limit process, set vehicle speed will decrease by1 mph (1 km/h).

Long press "SET-" button during speed limit process, set vehicle speed will decrease by 5 mph (5 km/h).

Overtaking

In speed limit process, in order to overtake or in other operation condition, fully depress accelerator pedal to enter pre-speed limit state, " LIMIT --- km/h " indicator on instrument cluster remains on.

After overtaking, if vehicle speed is higher than previous set limit speed, it enters pre-speed limit state, " LIMIT --- km/h " indicator on instrument cluster remains on.

After overtaking, if vehicle speed is less than previous set limit speed, it enters speed limit state, " LIMIT ON 30km/h " indicator on instrument cluster remains on.

5-3. Lane Assist System

Lane Assist System (If Equipped)

Lane assist system includes LDW, LDP and ELK, which can assist driver to reduce traffic accident due to lane departure, improving driving safety.

READ

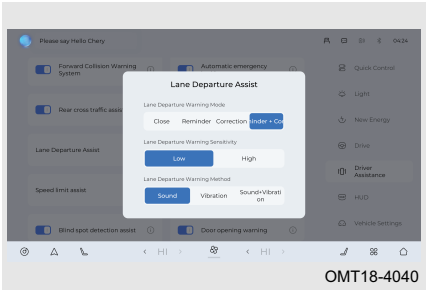
- Keep front view multi-function camera free from obstructions (such as bird droppings, insects and ice, etc.).
- Lane line captured by camera: It can detect white solid line, white dotted line, yellow solid line, yellow dotted line and double solid line lanes.
- The system may not operate in cold and bad weather conditions, such as rain, snow or fog and high contrast lighting will affect the sensor.
- The system may not operate when driving on cement road.
- The system may not operate when driving in road construction area.
- The system may not operate when driving on flooded or muddy roads.
- The system may not work when driving on sharp turns or narrow roads.
- The system will only work normally on the roads with two clear lane lines.
- When only single-sided lane line is detected, the system alarm stability decreases.
- If sensor is disturbed, the system may not work.
- Sensors may misidentify temporary construction markings on the road, etc. and give false alarm by mistake.
- If your vehicle suspension kit is not approved by us, the lane assist system may not operate properly.

WARNING

- The driver must control vehicle and operate as needed during the whole driving process to avoid danger.
- Lane assist system only offers assistance to the driver. It may not work properly under all driving conditions, weather conditions, traffic conditions or road conditions.

Lane Departure Warning (LDW)

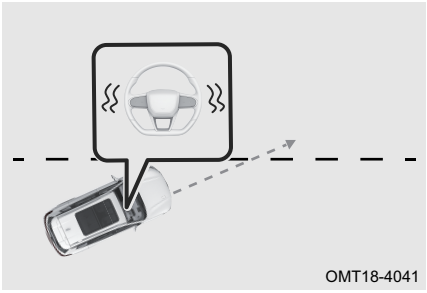
LDW detects lane line by front view multi-function camera. The system sends an alarm when wheel rolls over lane line and vehicle departs from its lane.



OMT18-4040

When the vehicle is powered on, and turn on Lane assist system through Audio System - Settings - Driver Assistance, and set assist mode, sensitivity and reminder mode.

Activating lane departure warning


OMT18-4041

When vehicle speed is no less than 40 mph (65 km/h) and lane line is recognized, LDW enters standby status.

When vehicle speed is no less than 65 km/h and the vehicle departs from one lane line, LDW is activated.

When vehicle speed decreases from 40 mph (65 km/h) to 37 mph (60 km/h), LDW enters limit status.

Lane departure warning indicator

When function is turned on/limited, " " gray indicator on instrument cluster remains on.

When it is in standby status, " " green indicator on instrument cluster remains on.

When it is activated, " " green indicator on instrument cluster flashes.

When there is a fault, " " yellow indicator on instrument cluster remains on.

Function limit

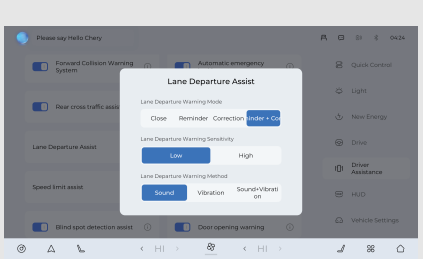
■ LDW may not work properly in the following conditions:

1. When changing lanes.
2. When turning with high speed.
3. When depressing accelerator pedal with excess force.
4. When depressing brake pedal hard.
5. When turning on the hazard light.
6. When turning on departure side turn signal light.
7. When driving on roads with tight curves.

8. When lane line is too thin, broken, blurred or departure side has no lane line.

Lane Departure Prevention (LDP)

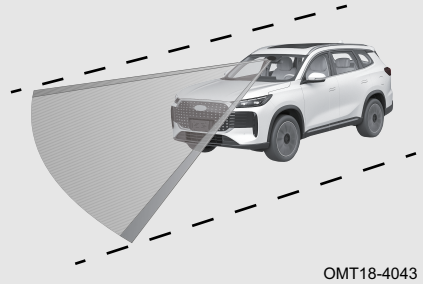
LDP monitors the relative position between vehicle and lane line by front view multi-function camera in real-time. When the vehicle is about to deviate from the lane, it controls the lateral movement and assists driver to keep the vehicle in the original lane.



OMT18-4042

When the vehicle is powered on, and turn on Lane assist system through Audio System - Settings - Driver Assistance, and set assist mode, sensitivity and reminder mode.

Activating lane departure prevention


OMT18-4043

When vehicle speed is no less than 40 mph (65 km/h) and lane line is recognized, LDP enters standby status.

When vehicle speed is no less than 40 mph (65 km/h) and the vehicle departs from one lane line, LDP is activated.

When vehicle speed decreases from 40 mph (65 km/h) to below 37 mph (60 km/h), LDW enters limit status.

⚠ CAUTION

- Driver performs an active control for vehicle when meeting a large curve.
- Driver performs an active control for vehicle when meeting some conditions such as lane increase, lane merger, etc.
- Driver performs an active control for vehicle when meeting complex traffic environment (such as intersection, heavy traffic road).

Lane departure prevention indicator

When function is turned on/limited, " " gray indicator on instrument cluster remains on.

When it is in standby status, "  " green indicator on instrument cluster remains on.

When it is activated, "  " green indicator on instrument cluster flashes.

When there is a fault, "  " yellow indicator on instrument cluster remains on.

Function limit

■ LDP may not work properly in the following conditions:

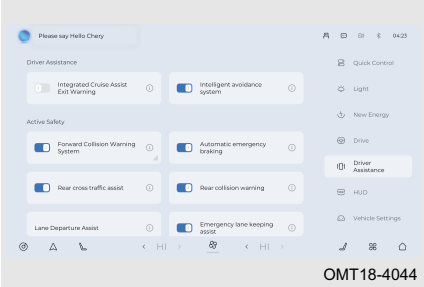
1. When changing lanes.
2. When lane is too narrow.
3. When lane is too wide.
4. When lane line is lost.
5. When the braking force is too large.
6. When turning with high speed.
7. When hazard lights are turned on.
8. When turning on departure side turn signal light.
9. When EPS system is not ready (such as malfunction).
10. When ABS system or ESP system is activated.
11. When TJA/ICA system is activated.
12. Steering wheel is operated by driver when LDP applies corrective steering intervention.

■ Under the following situations, do not use LDP. Failure to do so may cause an accident, resulting in death or serious:

1. When driving on low-quality section.
2. When driving on road construction site.
3. When driving on roads with more curves.
4. At night and when the surrounding light is dark.
5. When driving vehicle in a sporty style.
6. In bad weathers (such as rain, snow, fog).

Emergency Lane Keeping (ELK)

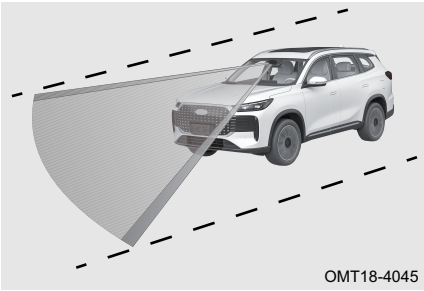
ELK system uses front view multi-function camera and rear corner radar to detect in real time that the vehicle departs from solid lane marker, road edge, oncoming or overtaking vehicles in adjacent lanes, if so, the vehicle continues to lateral movement or the system control lateral movement if necessary, which can keep the vehicle in the original lane and assist driver to reduce traffic accident due to lane departure, improving driving safety.



OMT18-4044

When the vehicle is powered on, and turn on Emergency lane keeping assist through Audio System - Settings - Driver Assistance.

Activating emergency lane keeping


OMT18-4045

When vehicle speed is no less than 40 mph (65 km/h) and vehicle target is monitored, ELK enters standby status.

When vehicle speed is no less than 40 mph (65 km/h) and vehicle target is monitored, ELK is activated.

When vehicle speed decreases from above 40 mph (65 km/h) to below 37 mph (60 km/h), ELK enters limit status.

⚠ CAUTION

- Driver performs an active control for vehicle when meeting a large curve.
- Driver performs an active control for vehicle when meeting some conditions such as lane increase, lane merger, etc.
- Driver performs an active control for vehicle when meeting complex traffic environment (such as intersection, heavy traffic road).

Emergency lane keeping indicator

When function is turned on/limited, " " gray indicator on instrument cluster remains on.

When it is in standby status, " " green indicator on instrument cluster remains on.

When it is activated, " " green indicator on instrument cluster flashes.

When there is a fault, " " yellow indicator on instrument cluster remains on.

Function limit

■ ELK may not work properly in the following conditions:

1. When changing lanes.

2. When lane is too narrow.
3. When lane is too wide.
4. When lane line is lost.
5. When the braking force is too large.
6. When turning with high speed.
7. When depressing accelerator pedal with excess force.
8. When hazard lights are turned on.
9. When double solid line lanes are detected and turn signal light is turned on.
10. When EPS system is not ready (such as malfunction).
11. When ABS system or ESP system is activated.
12. When TJA/ICA system is activated.
13. Steering wheel is operated by driver when ELK system applies corrective steering intervention.

■ Under the following situations, do not use ELK. Failure to do so may cause an accident, resulting in death or serious injury:

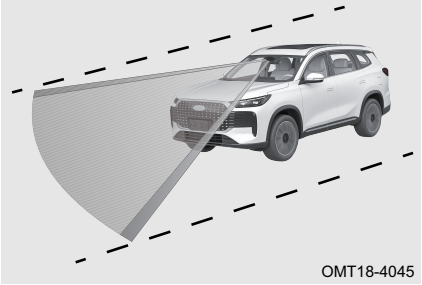
1. When driving on low-quality section.
2. When driving on road construction site.
3. When driving on roads with more curves.
4. At night and when the surrounding light is dark.
5. When driving vehicle in a sporty style.
6. In bad weathers (such as rain, snow, fog).

5-4. Lane Keep Assist System (LKA) (If Equipped)

Lane Keep Assist System (LKA) (If Equipped)

Introduction

LKA detects lane line by front view multi-function camera. When lane lines on left and right sides are detected by system, system applies corrective steering intervention to keep vehicle in the middle of lane.


OMT18-4045

When speed increases to ⩾ 37 mph (60 km/h), LKA enters activating; When speed is decreases from more than 37 mph (60 km/h) to 34 mph (55 km/h), LKA enters preactivating.

⚠ CAUTION

- Driver performs a active control when meeting a bigger curve.
- Driver performs a active control when meeting some conditions such as lane increase, lane merger, etc.
- Driver performs a active control when meeting complex traffic environment (such as intersection, traffic jam section).

Lane keep assist system (LKA) indicator

When LKA enters pre-activating mode, " " gray indicator in instrument cluster comes on.

When LKA enters activating mode or operates, " " green indicator in instrument cluster comes on.

When LKA is malfunctioning, " " yellow indicator in instrument cluster comes on.

Function limit

LKA may not work properly in the following conditions:

- When changing lanes.
- When turning on turn signal light.
- When braking with excess force.
- When turning with high speed.
- When depressing accelerator pedal with excess force.
- When turning on hazard warning light.
- LKA can recognize that driver does not operate steering wheel for a while.
- Steering wheel is operated by driver when LKA applies corrective steering intervention.

Under the following situations, do not use LKA. Failure to do so may cause an accident, resulting in death or serious injury:

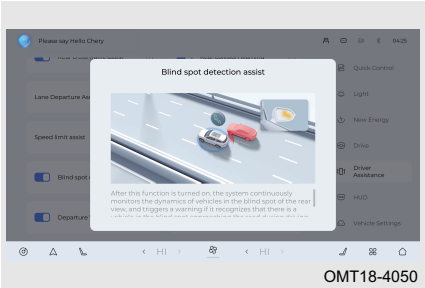
1. When driving on low-quality section.
2. When driving on road construction site.
3. When driving on roads with more curves.
4. During night and when the surrounding light is dark.
5. When driving vehicle in a sporty style.
6. In bad weathers (such as rain, snow, fog).

5-5. Blind Spot Detection Assist System

Blind Spot Detection Assist System (BSD)

BSD system is used to monitor presence of moving vehicles in left and right rear areas of your vehicle and inform related information to remind the driver

for driving safety and lane-changing safety. This system also extends some functions such as LCA, DOW, RCTA etc.



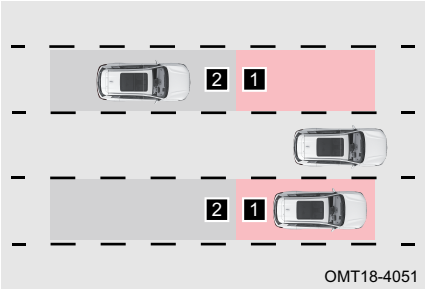
OMT18-4050

When the vehicle is powered on, and turn on Blind spot detection assist, Door opening warning, Rear collision warning, Rear cross traffic assist through Audio System - Settings - Driver Assistance.

Note: Blind spot detection, lane change assist and rear cross traffic alert share blind spot detection switch.

⚠ WARNING
Blind spot detection assist system just offers assistance to you. It may not work properly under all driving conditions, weather conditions, traffic conditions or road conditions.

Activating Blind Spot Detection (BSD) / Lane Change Assist (LCA)



OMT18-4051

When speed is no less than 9 mph (15 km/h), blind spot detection is activated; When speed decreases from above 9 mph (15 km/h) to 10 mph (10 km/h), BSD enters pre-activating.

1 Detection area of blind spot detection.

2 Vehicle approaches detection area of blind spot detection

Level I: If a vehicle enters detection area and meets alarm conditions, level alarm I is triggered. "" yellow indicator on rear view mirror remains on, "" green indicator in instrument cluster remains on.

Level II: On base of level I, turn on the turn signal light on the same side. After level II alarm is triggered, "" yellow indicator on rear view mirror blinks, "" green indicator on instrument cluster blinks, alarm sounds.

⚠ CAUTION

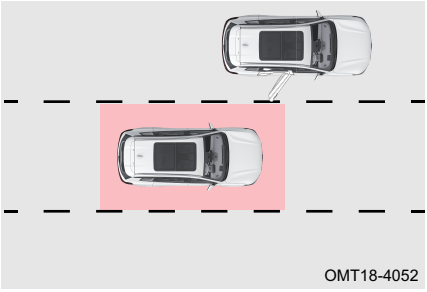
- When lots of snow or ice accumulates on rear bumper and near radar sensor, or if drive on snowy road for a long time, blind spot detection assist system may not work.
- When towing or attaching accessories to the rear of vehicle (such as a bicycle carrier), turn off blind spot detection assist system. Otherwise, radar radio waves will be affected, causing system work abnormally.
- BSD/LCA may detect stationary objects on or near a road (such as guardrails, tunnels, side walls, and parked vehicles) to turn on warning light.

Blind spot detection indicator

During operation, level I alarm " " green indicator in instrument cluster remains on; level II alarm " " green indicator in instrument cluster blinks.

When there is a fault, " " yellow indicator on instrument cluster remains on.

Door Opening Warning (DOW) System



When vehicle power is in OFF/ACC/ON mode and the vehicle is stationary, if blind spot detection assist system detects approaching vehicles on left and right sides of the vehicle and any door is opened, DOW sounds an alarm to remind the driver/occupant to pay attention to following vehicle when exiting to avoid collision.

Level I: If a vehicle enters detection area and meets alarm conditions, level alarm I is triggered. " " yellow indicator on corresponding side rear view mirror remains on, indicator on corresponding side rear door trim panel remains on.

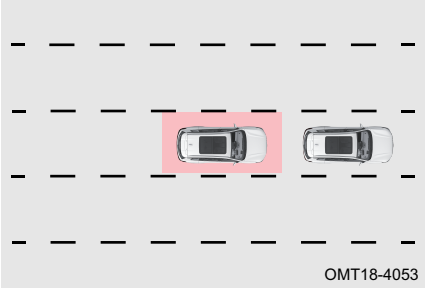
Level II: On base of level I, open the door. After level alarm II is triggered, " " yellow indicator on corresponding side rear mirror blinks, indicator on corresponding side rear door trim panel comes on, alarm sounds.

Function limit

■ DOW may not work properly in the following conditions:

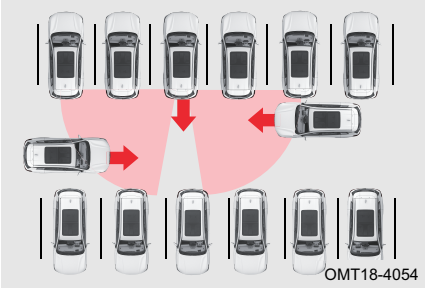
1. The vehicle speed is higher than 0 mph (0 km/h).
2. After switching vehicle power to OFF mode for 5 minutes.
3. When turning vehicle power to OFF mode and enters arming mode within 5 minutes.

Rear Collision Warning (RCW) System (If Equipped)


OMT18-4053

With vehicle power in ON mode and vehicle speed equal to or higher than 9 mph (15 km/h), if a following vehicle quickly approaches the vehicle, meter gives an alarm to remind that there is a approaching vehicle from behind and illuminate the hazard warning light to remind vehicles behind to keep a distance.

Rear Cross Traffic Alert (RCTA) System

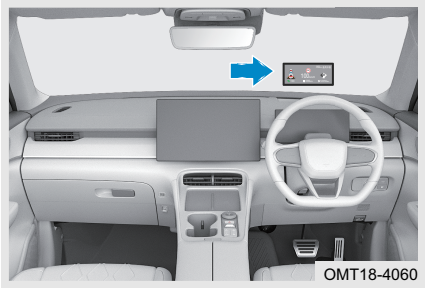

OMT18-4054

When vehicle power is turned to ON mode and vehicle is reversing (gear position is in R position), blind spot detection assist system detects that vehicles are approaching from left/ right sides, " " yellow indicator on rear view mirror blinks and alarm sounds.

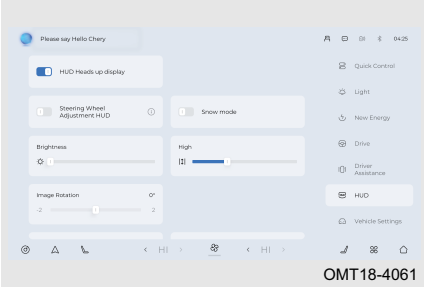
5-6. Driving Safety Assist System

Head Up Display (HUD) (If Equipped)

Head up display is a driving assistance instrument used in automobiles. Through optical systems and electronic control, the projected information (- such as driving status, driving assistance, navigation, entertainment, etc.) of the head up display is reasonably and vividly integrated with the actual traffic conditions and superimposed on the driver's effective view field, allowing the driver to obtain corresponding information in real time without adjusting their line of sight, enhancing their perception of the traffic environment.


OMT18-4060

The head up display is located in the front windshield area.



OMT18-4061

When the vehicle is powered on, and turn on/off HUD Heads up display through Audio System - Settings - HUD, and set Steering Wheel Adjustment HUD, Brightness adjustment, High adjustment, Image Rotation, SNOW mode, HUD information display, and default value restoring.

READ

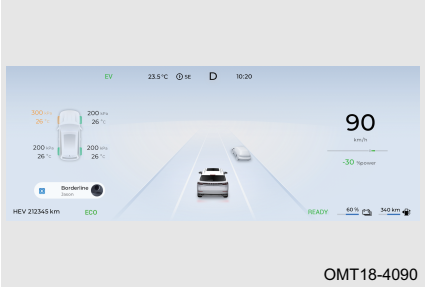
- In snowy weather or poor visibility, it is recommended to turn on snow mode.
- Head up display automatically adjusts the brightness of displayed image according to the collected ambient brightness signal value, so as to adapt to different ambient brightness.

CAUTION

- When the head up display is blocked, the image cannot be displayed.
- The front windshield film may affect the brightness of the head up display image.
- If the driver wears polarized sunglasses, the head-up display image may not be seen.
- Under extreme heat, the shown image may become dark, or even fade away. The display will recover after the temperature drops, which are normal.

Tyre Pressure Monitoring System (TPMS)

Tyre pressure monitoring system is an active safety configuration and can monitor pressure and temperature of tyre in real-time and the information can be checked through information display area. When tyre pressure is too low or temperature is too high, tyre pressure monitoring system alarms.



OMT18-4090

When vehicle speed is not lower than 15 mph (25 km/h), if TPMS has not received radio-frequency signal from one or more sensors after several minutes, TPMS will send system malfunction warning, " (!) " yellow indicator on instrument cluster will blink for tens of seconds and then remains on, "Abnormal Tyre Pressure, Check" will be displayed for several seconds and then turned off, which can be checked on tyre pressure display screen.

READ
Even if vehicle is equipped with tyre pressure monitoring system, check if tyre inflation pressure and appearance are normal before driving. Please contact the authorized service centre for inspection and repair as necessary.

Low pressure warning

When tyre pressure is less than 184 kpa and speed is not lower than 15 mph (25 km/h) for a period of time, system will send a low pressure warning, corresponding wheel symbol will blink, current tyre pressure value will be displayed and " (!) " yellow indicator in instrument cluster will remain on.

When vehicle power is turned to ON from OFF and tyre pressure is lower than 184 kpa, system will send a low pressure warning, corresponding wheel symbol will blink, current tyre pressure value will be displayed and " (!) " yellow indicator in instrument cluster will remain on.

When low pressure warning occurs, please inflate the tyre to 230 kpa as soon as possible. After the vehicle is driven at a speed not less than 15 mph (25 km/h) for a period of time, low pressure warning will be automatically canceled.

⚠ CAUTION
Low tyre pressure will increase fuel consumption and aggravate tyre wear (-serious tyre wear may cause a risk of tyre blowout), inspect causes of tyre air leakage. Please contact the authorized service centre for inspection and repair as soon as possible as needed.

High temperature warning

When tyre temperature is higher than 85°C and speed is not less than 15 mph (25 km/h) for a period of time, system will send a high temperature warning, corresponding wheel symbol will blink, current tyre temperature value will be displayed and " (!) " yellow indicator in instrument cluster will remain on.

When vehicle power is turned to ON from OFF and tyre temperature is higher than 85°C, system will send a high temperature warning, corresponding wheel symbol will blink, current tyre temperature value will be displayed and " " yellow indicator on instrument cluster will remain on.

When high temperature warning occurs, after tyre temperature is lower than 80°C and the vehicle is driven at a speed no less than 15 mph (25 km/h) for a period of time, high temperature warning will be automatically canceled.

⚠ CAUTION
When high temperature warning occurs, stop driving at once to cool down tyres naturally. Do not cool it down by pouring cold water, otherwise, tyre may be damaged, causing an accident. Please contact the authorized service centre for inspection and repair as soon as possible as needed.

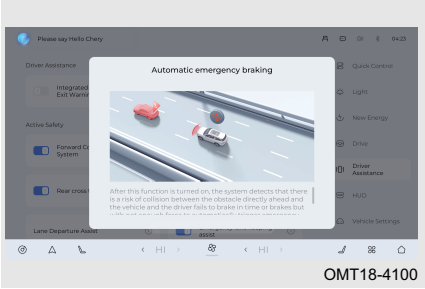
Function limit

■ Tyre pressure monitoring system may send a system malfunction warning in the following conditions:

1. Configuration learning of tyre pressure monitoring system is not performed after replacing wheels (spare tyre included).
2. If tyre pressure sensor or other components have been damaged, please contact the authorized service centre for inspection and repair as necessary.
3. Sensor may be affected due to electromagnetic shielding caused by installing tyre chains, affecting tyre pressure monitoring system proper operation.
4. The tyre pressure monitoring system may not work properly due to interference of electronic equipment (over standard equipment) installed on vehicle, resulting false alarm.
5. TPMS may not operate due to radio interference; And it may be interfered temporarily due to strong electromagnetic radio signals with same frequency (433 MHz).

Automatic Emergency Braking (AEB) System/Front Collision Warning (FCW) System

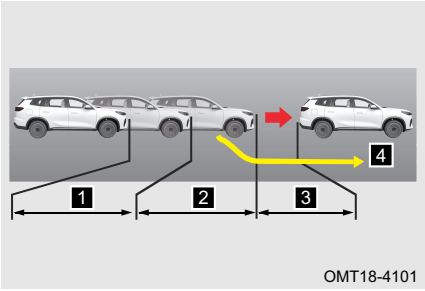
When vehicle is about to hit a vehicle or pedestrian ahead, automatic emergency braking system and front collision warning system work together, sounding an alarm to remind driver, if driver cannot respond quickly enough, vehicle will brake automatically, reducing loss from collision.



OMT18-4100

When the vehicle is powered on, and turn on Automatic emergency braking, Forward Collision Warning System through Audio System - Settings - Driver Assistance.

Activating automatic emergency braking system/front collision warning system



OMT18-4101

1 Start pre-warning before impacting.

2 Start braking partly before impacting.

3 Start emergency braking before impacting.

4 If driver reacts correctly (for example, avoid a collision by steering), the following emergency braking is canceled.

READ

Some configurations only work on vehicle targets, not pedestrians or cyclists.

⚠ CAUTION

- When vehicle speed is lower than 18 mph (30 km/h), FCW system does not send an alarm; When speed is higher than 52 mph (85 km/h), FCW does not sound an alarm for static target ahead.
- Operating speed range of AEB is 4 -38 mph (4 - 62 km/h) for static vehicle target (4 - 48 km/h for some models); Operating speed range of AEB is 4 -52 mph (4 - 85 km/h) for moving vehicle target; Operating speed range of AEB is 4 -40 mph (4 - 65 km/h) for pedestrians and cyclists (not support for some models).
- Driver needs to ensure that seat belts have been fastened, doors are closed. Failure to do so, AEB system does not work.
- Turn on electronic stability program system, front collision warning system and automatic emergency braking system. Otherwise, front collision warning system and automatic emergency braking system do not work.
- "  " yellow indicator on instrument cluster remains on, please go to the authorized service centre for inspection and repair as soon as possible.
- Driver needs to take over vehicle because vehicle does not keep stationary state when vehicle is braked automatically to stop.
- During automatic emergency braking system is activated, driver quickly rotate steering wheel or depress accelerator pedal deeply, automatic emergency braking system will exit.

⚠ WARNING

- The driver must control vehicle and operate as needed during the whole driving process to avoid danger.
- Automatic emergency braking system just offers assistance to you. It may not work properly under all driving conditions, weather conditions, traffic conditions or road conditions.
- The vehicle targets that can be detected by automatic emergency braking system include passenger vehicles, buses, trucks. For some vehicles, such as cement tank trucks, special vehicles with higher or lower chassis, the system has certain limitations in detecting.
- Automatic emergency braking system will work when it detects some characteristics consistent with normal human walking (such as head swing, arm swing, leg swing). Automatic emergency braking system detects pedestrians who across the vehicle's lane, but automatic emergency braking system does not detect pedestrians who walk alongside the lane, who are around a corner or who are blocked by any other objects.
- Automatic emergency braking system will work when it detects body and bicycle contour information as well as normal cycling movements. Automatic emergency braking system does not detect an oncoming cyclist as target.
- Automatic emergency braking system is not always capable of detecting vehicles, cyclists or pedestrians, and automatic emergency braking system may generate unnecessary braking automatically or not work for a variety of reasons. Automatic emergency braking system is only a driving assistance system to reduce severity of collision, it is not always possible to completely avoid collision in the speed range.

Precautions for automatic emergency braking system

1. Automatic emergency braking system can not violate laws of physics and has certain limitations. Driver must always keep control of the vehicle and be fully responsible for the vehicle.
2. Driver controls speed and the distance from vehicle ahead according to weathers, road surface conditions, traffic conditions, etc.
3. Automatic emergency braking system does not react to animals, crossing vehicles, oncoming vehicles, bicycles and pedestrians.
4. System performance will be greatly limited for targets that cut into the lane quickly, targets that are detected after the vehicle changes lanes, and targets in curves.
5. Fasten all seat belts and secure all loads to avoid danger when automatic emergency braking system is triggered.

6. When automatic emergency braking system is malfunctioning, " " yellow indicator on instrument cluster remains on, please go to the authorized service centre for inspection and repair as soon as possible.
7. When inspecting the vehicle using a drum tester, front collision warning system and automatic emergency braking system should be turned off.
8. When installing non-full size spare tyre, it is recommended to turn off front collision warning system and automatic emergency braking system, and replace full-size tyres of original vehicle in time.
9. In some special circumstances, automatic emergency braking system may perform unnecessary warning and braking, such as at track that crosses a road, entering the underground parking lot turning, etc. Some circumstances will affect and weaken sensor detection, effecting related functions of system, such as tunnel, light of incoming vehicle, reflection of slippery road.
10. Camera sensor is installed behind windshield of vehicle; note that view of sensor should not be covered by pollutants, front or surrounding areas should not be modified. When sensor is completely covered by snow, system function will exit. Automatic emergency braking system performance may be reduced or it may do not work due to sensor vibration or collision. In this case, please go to the authorized service centre for recalibration of sensors as soon as possible.

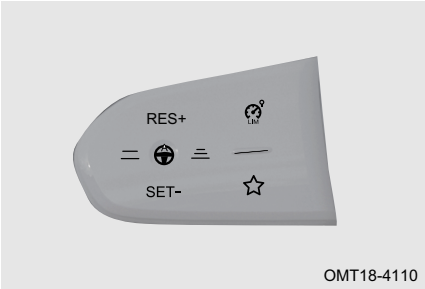
Precautions mentioned above do not cover all circumstances that may affect automatic emergency braking system normal operation. Automatic emergency braking system function may fail to bring the expected effect due to other reasons. Driver must always assume full responsibility for vehicle control anytime.

5-7. Intelligent Cruise Control System

Traffic Jam Assist (TJA) System /Integrated Cruise Assist (ICA) System

TJA/ICA detects lane line through the front view camera to perform vertical and horizontal control for vehicle, providing driving assistance and reducing driver’s workload under monotonous driving environment or busy traffic. This system also extends the intelligent avoidance system.

Activating traffic jam assist system/integrated cruise assist system

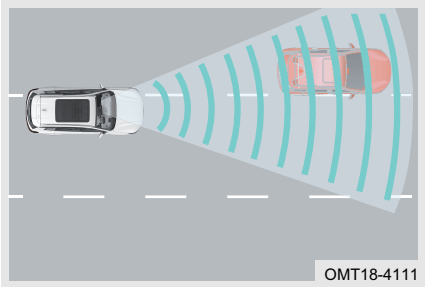


Main button " ":

Activate/exit function: When TJA/ICA is in pre-activating or activated state, short press main button to activate/exit TJA/ICA;

Mode switching function: When ACC is in pre-cruising or cruising state, or TJA/ICA is in pre-activating or activated state, long press the main button to switch between ACC and TJA/ICA modes.

If the TJA/ICA activation conditions are not met, " " gray indicator on instrument cluster remains on; If the TJA/ICA activation conditions are met, " " blue indicator on instrument cluster remains on.



TJA: When vehicle speed is lower than 37 mph (60 km/h), vehicle will be kept near lane center. If no lane line is detected, the vehicle follows vehicle ahead as driving target. If neither lane line nor target vehicle is detected, TJA will be turned off.

ICA: When vehicle speed is 37 mph (60 km/h) to 80 mph (130 km/h), vehicle will be kept near lane center. If no lane line is detected, ICA will be turned off regardless of whether there is a target vehicle ahead.

READ

When the vehicle uses the TJA/ICA function for the first time, and the lane lines on both sides are clear, turn on TJA/ICA function and drive the vehicle in a straight line within the lane lines for a certain period of time (with slight differences in the duration of individual vehicle), TJA/ICA function will automatically perform self-learning. During the self-learning period, the lateral control parameters will dynamically adapt and adjust until the optimal state is reached, and then self-learning is completed. Note: Before self-learning is completed, the centering effect of TJA/ICA function may not be obvious, and the deviation correction effect of lane assist system may not be obvious.

Traffic jam assist system/integrated cruise assist system indicator

When it is pre-activated, " " gray indicator on instrument cluster remains on.

When it is activated, " " blue indicator on instrument cluster remains on.

When there is a fault, " " yellow indicator on instrument cluster remains on.

Function limit

■ TJA/ICA may not work properly in the following conditions:

1. Hands off steering wheel.
2. Turn signal lights are turned on.
3. Hazard lights are turned on.
4. Lane line is not detected.
5. Overly narrow or wide lanes.
6. The vehicle speed is less than 1 mph (1 km/h).
7. Too small lane curve radius.
8. Driver rotates steering wheel actively.
9. Any exiting condition for adaptive cruise control system exists.

WARNING

- The driver must control vehicle and operate as needed during the whole driving process to avoid danger.
- TJA/ICA just offers assistance to you. It may not work properly under some driving conditions, weather conditions, traffic conditions or road conditions.

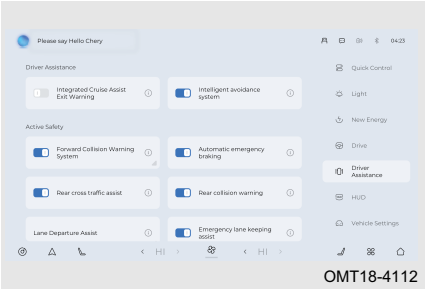
Suggest to use traffic jam assist system/integrated cruise assist system

When TJA/ICA monitors vehicle speed is higher than 37 mph (60 km/h), the current lane lines are clear and persistent, and ACC is in cruising state, " " blue indicator on instrument cluster remains on. After a certain period of time,

the instrument cluster pop-up window prompts "Road conditions are good, we suggest you to turn on Intelligent Cruise Control system".

Exiting reminder for traffic jam assist system/integrated cruise assist system

When TJA/ICA exits from the activated state, the system issues an alarm sound and the instrument cluster pop-up window prompts "Intelligent Cruise Control system has exited, please note" to inform the driver that the function has exited.



OMT18-4112

When the vehicle is powered on. Turn on Integrated Cruise Assist Exit Warning through Audio System - Settings - Driver Assistance.

If you feel that the exiting reminder will interfere with driving, you can turn off this reminder function according to your preference.

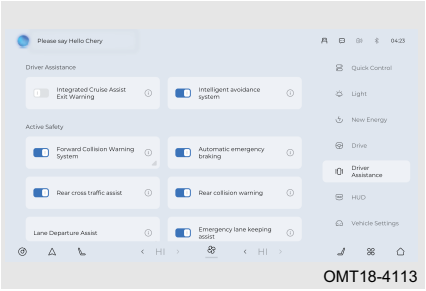
Precautions for traffic jam assist system/integrated cruise assist system

1. TJA/ICA system is a driving assist system, which cannot violate laws of physics and has certain limitations. Driver must always keep control of the vehicle and be fully responsible for the vehicle.
2. Longitudinal control of TJA/ICA system is performed by ACC, lateral control of TJA/ICA is performed by LKA, all precautions for ACC and LKA are also applicable to the system.
3. TJA/ICA system do not provide automatic driving function and does not allow hand off driving. Under the conditions such as turning, crossing, merging and vehicle ahead cuts in, diver should control vehicle at all times to ensure safety.
4. TJA/ICA system performance is affected by weather, illumination and lane line clarity. Under the conditions of backlight, sunset, night, snow and ice on the road surface and unclear lane lines due to road wear, the performance will be significantly reduced or even lost.
5. When traffic jam assist system/integrated cruise assist system is malfunctioning, " " yellow indicator on instrument cluster remains on, at this time, traffic jam assist system/integrated cruise assist system will not work, please go to the authorized service centre for inspection and repair as soon as possible.

Precautions mentioned above do not cover all circumstances that may affect system normal operation. System function may fail to bring the expected effect due to other reasons. Driver must always take full responsibility for vehicle control anytime.

Intelligent Avoidance System (IES) (If Equipped)

Under the active control of TJA/ICA (driving in the lane), when the vehicle speed is between 37 mph (60 km/h) and 80 mph (130 km/h) and vehicle is about to overtake larger vehicles (such as trucks and buses) in the adjacent lane, the system controls the lateral movement of vehicle appropriately to keep it away from large vehicles until the overtaking is completed.



OMT18-4113

When the vehicle is powered on, and turn on Intelligent avoidance system through Audio System - Setting - Driver Assistance.

5-8. Driver Monitoring System (DMS) (If Equipped)

Driver Monitoring System (DMS) (If Equipped)

DMS (Driver Monitoring System) uses the infrared camera arranged in the cabin to monitor driving status of driver in real time and collects the face image of driver (such as yawning, eyes closed, nodding, etc.) and line-of-sight area information in real time, judging the driver status in real time. The camera only captures the face of driver, does not capture the rest of the vehicle. The entire face information captured will not be used for personal identification and will not be stored. The system is enabled by default.

■ Main function

1. Determine if driver is fatigued by monitoring facial expression, eye closure, blinking frequency, etc. of driver. When detecting that driver is in a state of fatigue, pop-up window will display on instrument cluster and an alarm sounds;
2. Determine where the driver is looking and if the driver is distracted by tracking driver line-of-sight. When the driver is detected to be distracted, pop-up window will display on instrument cluster and an alarm sounds;
3. The system is enabled by default every time the vehicle is started, and can be turned off manually on head unit screen. After each power-on, the system will perform self-check, when the camera is blocked or system is malfunctioning, the corresponding prompt will display on instrument cluster.

⚠ CAUTION

- DMS can be set in audio system. For details, refer to "Audio System".
- When driver monitor system is activated, "" indicator on the meter comes on; when driver monitor system is abnormal, "" indicator on the meter comes on. Please go to authorized service centre for inspection and repair as soon as possible.
- When the vehicle speed is higher than 10 mph (10 km/h), driver monitor system will sound an alarm when the system detects that driver is in a fatigued driving state.
- When the vehicle speed is greater than 12 mph (20 km/h), driver monitor system will sound an alarm when the system detects that driver is distracted or does not respond to the reminder.

⚠ WARNING

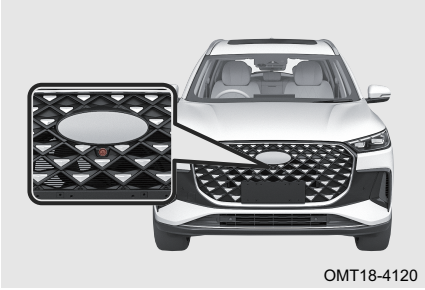
Driver fatigue monitoring system is only an auxiliary tool. In any case, the driver should be responsible for the safety of the vehicle. Fatigue and distracted driving are strictly prohibited. He/she must always concentrate on driving carefully.

5-9. Parking Assist System

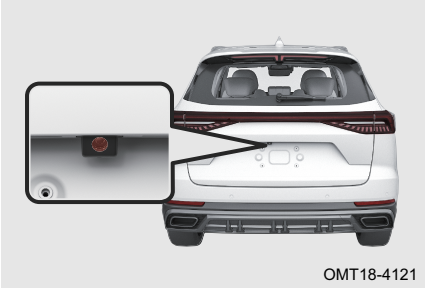
Panoramic View Monitor System (AVM)

Panoramic view monitor system collects surrounding images of vehicle through four cameras and audio system displays the surrounding images and lane guideline, so as to assist the driver to park safely and easily.

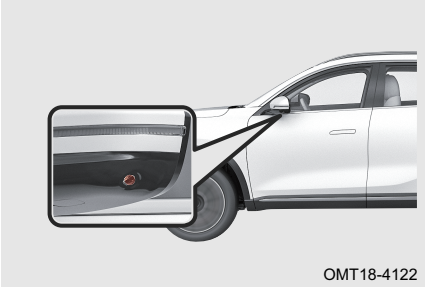
Camera layout


OMT18-4120

Installation position of front camera: Lower middle part of the front license plate.

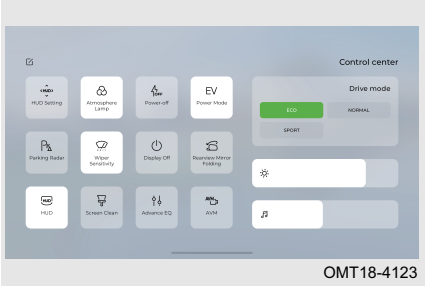

OMT18-4121

Installation position of rear camera: Upper middle part of rear license plate.


OMT18-4122

Installation position of left/right camera: Bottom of left/right outside rear view mirror.

Usage methods



OMT18-4123

When the vehicle is powered on, and the vehicle is in stationary status, click " AVM " button on control center to enter panoramic view monitor system; Click " ⊗ " button to exit panoramic view monitor system.

When the vehicle is powered on, vehicle speed is lower than 18 mph (30 km/h):

Method 1: Move shift lever to R to enter AVM; Move shift lever out from R to exit panoramic view monitor system.

Method 2: Turning at a large angle to enter panoramic view monitor system (it is necessary to turn on steering linkage).

Method 3: Turn on left/right turn signal light to enter panoramic view monitor system (it is necessary to turn on steering linkage); Turn off left/right turn signal light to exit panoramic view monitor system.

Note: After turning vehicle power to OFF mode or vehicle speed is higher than 18 mph (30 km/h), it exits panoramic view monitor system.

READ

The panoramic view monitor system provides driving assistance convenience, but the object in the image does not reflect the actual size and obstacle distance. Compared to the actual image, the image has a little delay and blind spot. Therefore, the panoramic view function is not a substitute for driver’s operation and judgment. Driver should pay attention to the surroundings and drive safely during turning on/off and using the function.

Switching view


OMT18-4124

Click " ⊗ " button, and shift lever is not in R, exit panoramic view monitor system.

Click " 3D " button to switch between 2D/3D view; Click " ▶■ " button around the vehicle to switch the corresponding view.

Click " (•) " button to switch wheel side view.

Click " ⬡ " button to enter panoramic view monitor system setting.

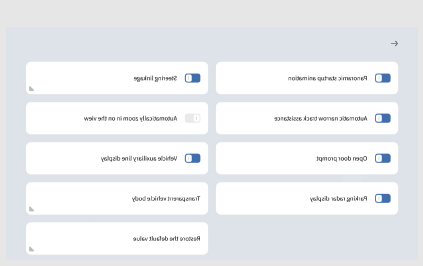
READ

The panoramic view monitor system is very helpful for parking and safety driving. It is recommended that you should be familiar with this function in an open and convenient area.

⚠ CAUTION

- Do not scratch the lens when cleaning dirt or snow on the camera surface.
- Do not place any object on the camera of panoramic view monitor system.
- The object distance seen from the panoramic view monitor system is different from the actual distance.
- Before using panoramic view monitor system, make sure to extend outside rear view mirrors and close the back door firmly.
- The panoramic view monitor system has been calibrated professionally before leaving the factory. Any removal/installation and changes on camera installation position and angle without permission may affect the function and effect of panoramic view monitor system.
- The panoramic view monitor system provides driving assistance convenience, but the object in the image does not reflect the actual size and obstacle distance. Compared to the actual image, the image has a little delay and blind spot. Therefore, the panoramic view function is not a substitute for driver's operation and judgment. Driver should pay attention to the surroundings and drive safely during turning on/off and using the function.

System settings


OMT18-4125

[Panoramic startup animation] Click " AVM " button for the first time to enter AVM and panoramic startup animation.

[Steering linkage] Turning at a large angle to enter AVM. When turning on left/right turn signal light, 3D view of rear left/right of vehicle will be displayed.

[Automatically zoom in on the view] Enter enlarged view automatically based on obstacle distance.

[Open door prompt] Prompt the status of moon roof, doors and back door.

[Vehicle auxiliary line display] When entering AVM, load the static/dynamic lane guideline and wheel track line.

[Parking radar display] Display corresponding radar distance information (red, yellow, green areas).

[Transparent vehicle body] Change the transparency of vehicle model.

[License Plate Number Setting] Set and display the corresponding license plate number information on vehicle model.

[Restore the default value] Restore default settings.

⚠ CAUTION

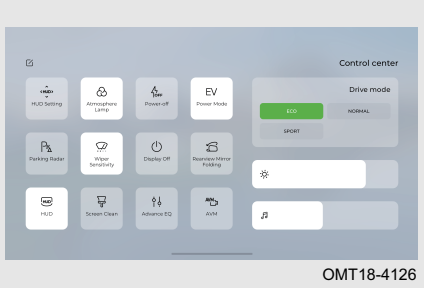
When the AVM system is turned on, the host displays the AVM system interface. When the host detects that the system or one or more cameras are malfunctioning, the corresponding single-side view and bird's-eye view will appear black screen display and corresponding text or icon prompts. At this time, the AVM system may not be used normally, and the black screen fault may occur in the following scenarios:

- Do not use high-pressure water or steam to rinse the camera sensor area, otherwise water or steam will enter the camera and condense on the lens, causing blurred images or even causing a short circuit in the camera, resulting in a black screen phenomenon in the camera image.
- Do not tap or bump the camera in any way. Severe tapping and bumping may cause the camera position to deviate or the device to be damaged, which may cause the camera interface to appear misaligned or black screen.
- Non-professionals should not disassemble camera equipment. If there is a poor connection between the vehicle and the rear view camera display system, the camera may appear black screen.
- If the black screen occurs in the camera during heavy rain, please check whether water enters the camera installation position. If water enters through the gap of the connector, a short circuit may occur in the around view monitor, which may cause the camera screen to go black.
- When other electrical equipment is working at full load, the rear view camera display system may be affected by voltage fluctuations, which may cause the camera screen to go black. You can try to disconnect other electrical equipment and restart the vehicle to restore the normal use of the camera function.

The above scenario does not fully cover all the situations where the AVM system has a black screen display fault. In order to ensure the normal use of the function, when the system has a black screen fault, go to the local aftersales service center as soon as possible for inspection and repair.

Parking Radar System

Parking radar system is a radar detection device, adopts radar sensors (4 sensors or 8 sensors) to detect if there are obstacles in front of and behind the vehicle and distance from obstacles. The driver is prompted by the audio system display, sound alarm, etc., so as to assist the driver to park safely and easily.



OMT18-4126

When the vehicle is powered on. When the vehicle is stationary and the gear position is in D/N/R, parking radar system turns on automatically; When parking radar system turns on and the gear position is in D/N (" " button is highlighted), click " " button on control center to turn on/off parking radar system manually.

READ

Parking radar button is not standard. Please refer to the actual vehicle configuration.

Usage methods

Method 1: When the vehicle is powered on. When the vehicle is in R position and the radar sensor detects an obstacle, audio system displays distance from obstacle (red, yellow, green areas) accompanied by alarm sound.

Method 2 (if equipped): When the vehicle is powered on. When the vehicle is in D/N/R position and the radar sensor detects an obstacle, audio system displays distance from obstacle (red, yellow, green areas) accompanied by alarm sound.

When parking radar system is turned on and vehicle speed is higher than 9 mph (15 km/h), parking radar system is turned off automatically. When vehicle speed is less than 9 mph (15 km/h), parking radar system is turned on automatically again; When the vehicle is in D/N position, click " " button to turn off parking radar system, parking radar system cannot be turned on again automatically according to vehicle speed.

Note: When radar sensor is malfunctioning, parking radar system will sound for 2 seconds when it is turned on. When parking brake is applied or the shift lever is changed to P, the radar sensor malfunction warning sound will be shielded.

READ

- Monitoring distance is the shortest vertical distance between obstacle and radar sensor.
- When parking brake is applied with radar ON, audio system will only display arc information, and audio system prompt does not sound.
- For models with 8 sensors, regardless of whether the parking radar system is turned on before moving shift lever to R position, parking radar system still operates when shifting to other positions (except for P gear).

⚠ CAUTION

- For obstacles out of detection range, radar sensors will not alarm.
- When vehicle is moving, be aware that the reverse radar sensors on the other side may get close to other obstacles.

Function limit

■ Parking radar system may not work normally in the following conditions:

1. When vehicle is on a steep slope.
2. When driving in jelly-like snow or rain.
3. Low objects such as rocks, etc. cannot be detected.
4. Objects higher than bumper cannot be detected.
5. Thin objects such as wires, fences and ropes, etc. cannot be detected.
6. When vehicle is equipped with a high frequency radio or antenna is in use.
7. When radar sensor surfaces are frozen, they will not detect any obstacle.
8. When radar sensors are covered by dirt, snow or mud, they may not detect obstacles.
9. Objects that easily absorb ultrasonic waves (such as soft snow, cotton, sponge) cannot be detected.
10. When there is large noise near the vehicle, (such as vehicle horns, motorcycle engines, air brakes of large vehicles, or other loud noises producing ultrasonic waves).
11. If multiple radar sensors detect obstacles, the distances between each radar sensor and each obstacle are displayed on audio system simultaneously, and system sounds according to nearest obstacle.

Cleaning radar sensor


OMT18-4127

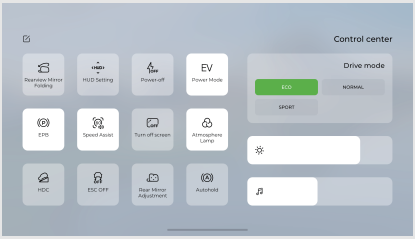
When washing vehicle, use a soft cloth or water (low water pressure) to wash off foreign matter such as snow, mud, and dust on the surface of radar sensor.

High pressure water flow such as water guns or large external forces may damage the radar sensors. Do not pinch or impact the radar sensors, otherwise the sensors will not work normally.

5-10. Braking Force Control System

Electronic Stability Control System

Electronic stability control system keeps vehicle stability when oversteering or understeering. When oversteering or understeering is detected, system applies braking to one or more wheels to enhance control of vehicle stability and ensure the lateral stability of vehicle driving.



OMT18-4132

When the vehicle is powered on, click " OFF " button on control center to turn on/off electronic stability control system.

READ

- Electronic stability control system cannot be turned off during operation.
- When driving vehicle for the first time, Electronic Stability Control System (ESP) is on by default.
- Electronic stability control system may give an alarm abnormally after replacing with the non-full size spare tyre. After using the normal size tyre and driving for 1 mph (1 km/h), it will automatically return to normal.

Electronic stability program system indicator

When turning off, " OFF " yellow indicator on instrument cluster remains on.

During operation, " " yellow indicator on instrument cluster blinks.

When there is a fault, " " yellow indicator on instrument cluster remains on.

WARNING

- When electronic stability program system is malfunctioning, please go to the authorized service centre for inspection and repair as soon as possible.
- Even when ESP is working, high speed driving, sharp turns or poor road conditions can cause accidents.
- ESP function does not completely ensure that you can take over vehicle if it has lost control due to various extreme situations. Even with ESP, always follow laws and regulations to avoid accidents.
- The function of driver assistance relies on ESP for safety. If ESP is turned off, many functions of driver assistance will not be available, temporary malfunction light may appear on the instrument cluster to indicate that the function is not available (not driver assistance system failure). In order to continue to use the driver assistance function, turn on ESP function again, the driver assistance function will recover.

Function limit

■ Under the following conditions, ESP needs to be turned off:

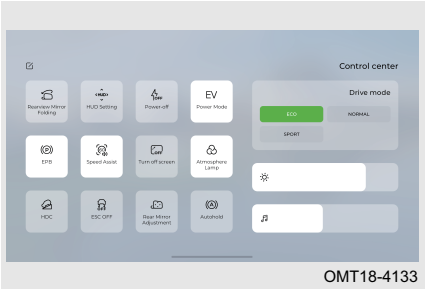
1. When driving with tyre chains.
2. When starting vehicle on power tester.
3. When driving on roads with deep snow or loose gravel.

READ

To improve vehicle traction when driving on sand or gravel, it is recommended to turn ESP off.

Hill Descent Control (HDC) System (if equipped)

HDC system can help vehicle drive on steep roads safely under controlled conditions. After HDC is turned on, when vehicle is driving down on a steep slope, speed control range is 10 - 21 mph (10 - 35 km/h). When initial speed is lower than the minimum speed, vehicle will control at the minimum speed by default. The current control vehicle speed can be increased or decreased in a given speed range by depressing accelerator or brake pedal.



OMT18-4133

When vehicle speed is no more than 37mph (60 km/h), click " " button on control center to turn on/ off hill descent control system.

⚠ CAUTION

- Before entering steep road, set hill descent control system so that driver can operate steering wheel without distraction.
- When hill descent control system is working, the ABS system will start automatically if there is a tyre lock.
- When hill descent control system is working, if any wheel loses contact with ground, the braking force will be distributed to the wheel with higher adhesion coefficient.
- Hill descent control system actively applies braking force through the operation of electronic stability program system. There will be a hydraulic operation sound when the system is working, which is a normal phenomenon. When the electronic stability program system fails, the hill descent control system cannot be turned on. Please go to the authorized service centre for inspection and repair as soon as possible.

⚠ WARNING

The driver must control vehicle and operate as needed during the whole driving process to avoid danger.

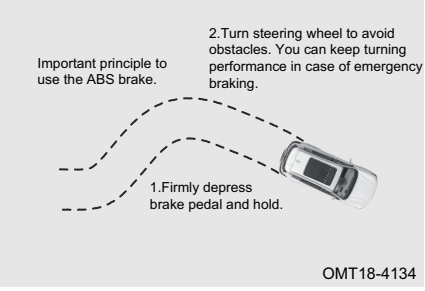
Hill descent control system indicator

When it is activated, "" green indicator on instrument cluster remains on.

When there is a fault, "" yellow indicator on instrument cluster remains on.

Anti-lock Brake System (ABS)

ABS can prevent wheel from being locked in excessive braking or braking on a slippery road, avoiding vehicle sideways slippage or vehicle drifting and keeping vehicle stability.



ABS does not function during normal braking and operates only (- brake pedal pulsates with noise, ensuring brake performance and steering performance, if the space is enough, the vehicle can also avoid obstacles) during sudden braking. Never release brake pedal in this case.

⚠ WARNING

- Always drive carefully and make sure to decelerate during turning.
- When anti-lock brake system is malfunctioning, please go to the authorized service centre for inspection and repair as soon as possible.
- Although anti-lock brake system can ensure the best braking effect, braking distance will vary largely due to road conditions.
- Also, anti-lock brake system cannot eliminate risks arising from close-following driving, driving through water, turning quickly or driving on poor road surfaces and cannot avoid accidents caused by inattentive or inappropriate driving.
- ABS cannot ensure that braking distance can be shortened in any situations. When vehicle is equipped with tyre chains, on sand or snow covered roads, vehicles with ABS may require a longer braking distance compared to vehicles without ABS.

Anti-lock brake system indicator

When there is a fault, "(ABS)" yellow indicator on instrument cluster remains on.

⚠ WARNING

When anti-lock brake system malfunction indicator and brake system malfunction indicator remain on at the same time, park your vehicle in a safety place far away from major traffic and contact the authorized service centre for inspection and repair immediately.

Function limit

■ ABS will make operation sound in following conditions:

1. Rebounding sound of brake pedal.
2. Impacting sound between suspension and vehicle body due to emergency braking.
3. Operation sound of motor, solenoid valve and return pump in hydraulic unit.
4. Operation sound of solenoid valve when electronic brake force distribution system is intervened in braking.
5. Buzz will be heard for a short time after vehicle is powered on or engine is started, indicating system self-test is performed.

■ Always maintain a safe distance from vehicle ahead in the following situations:

1. When driving on rough roads.
2. When driving on roads with potholes or uneven surfaces.
3. When driving with tyre chains.
4. When driving on dirt, gravel or snow-covered roads.

⚠ CAUTION

Tyre size, specification and tread pattern wear will seriously affect anti-lock brake system performance. Replaced tyres should have same size, load capacity and structure as original one. When a tyre is faulty, it is recommended to replace with an original brand at the authorized service station.

⚠ WARNING

- When driving on rainy days, properly control the vehicle speed, because if the wheel spins or slips, ABS system will lose control of vehicle.
- Although ABS system can help to control vehicle, make sure to drive carefully, maintain a moderate speed and keep safe distance from preceding vehicles. There are certain limitations in vehicle stability and steering wheel operation effect even ABS system operates.

Extended Function

Electric Brakeforce Distribution (EBD) system

EBD system automatically adjusts braking force distribution ratio of front and rear axles according to axial load transfer difference caused by braking to improve braking efficiency. In addition, EBD system works together with ABS system to improve braking stability. Also, when braking in curve, brake force of inside and outside wheel can be adjusted to improve braking stability.

Traction Control System (TCS)

During starting off or rapidly acceleration, driving wheels may slip. On slippery roads such as snowy or icy road, direction could get out of control and cause a dangerous situation. When TCS detects that driven wheel speed is lower than drive wheel speed (a feature of slip) using sensors, it sends a signal to adjust ignition timing, reduce throttle opening, downshift or brake wheels so that wheel will no longer slip.

Hill-start Assist Control (HAC) system

HAC can prevent vehicle from moving backward when starting off on uphill. After vehicle is stationary, HHC system adopts longitudinal acceleration sensor to determine if the vehicle is on a slope. When vehicle starts from stationary state on a slope to drive or reverse upwards, HHC system automatically operates. When starting off, after driver releases brake pedal, system maintains previous braking pressure for 1-2 seconds to hold the vehicle. As increasing of drive torque, brake pressure reduces gradually, avoiding accidents caused by moving backward when starting off on a slope.

Brake Assist System (BAS)

Brake assist system is used to shorten the braking distance in emergency braking. In an emergency, driver usually brakes in time, but generally does not apply the maximum braking force, thus lengthening braking distance. In this

case, brake assist system will operate. When driver depresses brake pedal rapidly in an emergency with insufficient force, brake assist system quickly increases brake pressure to maximum level, making anti-lock brake system shorten braking distance more quickly and effectively.

Brake Override System (BOS)

When the accelerator and brake pedals are depressed at the same time, the engine output may be restrained.

Emergency Brake Assist (EBA) system

EBA system is used to shorten the braking distance in emergency braking. In an emergency, driver usually brakes in time, but generally does not apply the maximum braking force, thus lengthening braking distance. In this case, EBA system will operate: When driver depresses brake pedal rapidly in an emergency with insufficient force, EBA system quickly increases brake pressure to maximum level, making anti-lock brake system to short braking distance more quickly and effectively.

5-11. Plug-in Hybrid Electric Vehicle System (PHEV)

PHEV can be driven by fuel energy and electricity energy, which combines the advantages of electric vehicle and fuel vehicle, there is no need to worry about driving mileage of electric vehicle and high fuel consumption of fuel vehicle. It satisfies economy, energy-saving and environmental friendly.

Power Battery

Basic function of power battery

Power battery can be charged and discharged repeatedly for several times. The main method of charging power battery is to plug in the external power gun for charging, and power battery can also be charged by motor when braking, sliding or starting engine.

The vehicle has intelligent recharging function. When the function is triggered, 12 V battery will be charged by power battery. Therefore, when the vehicle is started again after being placed for a period of time, SOC or pure electric driving mileage displayed on instrument cluster will decrease, which is a normal phenomenon.

■ Since the performance of power battery will decline in low temperature environment, the following treatment methods will help you to use the vehicle better:

1. If ambient temperature is lower than -10℃, it is recommended to park vehicle in a warm house or a garage with room temperature.
2. If there is no warm house or garage with room temperature, the vehicle has charging and heating functions of plug-in charging gun. If charging gun is connected, it is recommended to select travel reservation function half an

hour before departure (travel reservation function can be set in audio system and remote control APP), which can increase power battery temperature to the best state and turn on air conditioning in advance, so that you can have a better driving experience.

■ The following methods will help power battery to be in the best state:

1. It is recommended to charge power battery fully with charging device at least once every week.
2. When SOC is less than 30% during driving, avoid sudden acceleration and high-speed driving, and charge it as soon as possible.
3. When the vehicle is not used for a long time, park it in a place where the ambient temperature is lower than 45 ℃ and there is no ponding, and try to avoid direct sunlight.
4. When the vehicle is not used for a long time, SOC displayed on instrument cluster may be inaccurate. Do not judge the remaining power of power battery based on SOC, and charge battery fully before driving.
5. When the vehicle is not used for a long time, power battery system should be fully charged once a month and then discharged to maintain the SOC at about 50%; Failure to do so may cause excessive discharge of power battery and decrease power battery performance, and vehicle malfunction and damage caused by this will not be guaranteed.
6. For a new vehicle, when the power battery is in normal condition, vehicle driving mileage may fluctuate due to driving habits (such as frequent acceleration and deceleration), road conditions (such as driving on a large and long slope), temperature (such as low temperature) and whether electric equipment (such as air conditioning) is turned on, which is a normal phenomenon.
7. Power battery is a special chemical product, which needs to be used and maintained properly, so proper daily use and maintenance is very important for performance maintenance. At the same time, power battery will decline naturally due to chemical characteristics. Therefore, for vehicles that have been used for a period of time, when trip mileage decreases after battery is fully charged, it is recommended to go to authorized service centre for inspection. If authorized service centre checks that the total capacity of power battery is in normal range, the decrease of trip mileage may be caused by external reasons such as driving habits, temperature etc.

Power battery recovery

■ Recover and disposal range

Power battery whose residual capacity and charge and discharge performance after using cannot guarantee the vehicle normal driving, or is not used again after it is removed due to other reasons.

■ Recover and disposal process

The power battery is installed on the vehicle chassis, which consists of lithium battery cells. Disposal at will can cause pollution and harm to the environment.

According to relevant regulations, vehicle owner is obliged to hand over used power battery to recycling service stations. It is strictly forbidden to hand over used power battery to other units or individuals. The vehicle owner shall be responsible for environmental pollution or safety accidents caused by unauthorized removal or disassembly of the power battery.

Be sure to dispose according to the following information or requirements. For details on the recycling and disposal of power battery, please go to authorized service station.

1. The temporary recycling service centre for used power battery is the local authorized service station.
2. The disassembly of power battery must be performed by professional serviceman with certification qualification of power battery supplier.
3. The power battery belongs to the 9th category of dangerous goods and must be transported by vehicles with the 9th category of dangerous goods transportation qualification.
4. The removed power battery should be stored in a normal temperature, dry environment, away from flammable materials, heat sources, water sources and other hazards.

⚠ WARNING

- Do not dispose of power battery by yourself.
- Do not sell, transfer or modify power battery.
- When power battery needs to be repaired, removed, replaced and disposed, always go to authorized service station.

Usage precautions for power battery

Power battery belongs to high voltage energy-storage device and dangerous goods. It is necessary to go to authorized service centre to have professional serviceman install and maintain power battery and observe related safety regulations strictly; Non-professional serviceman and improper operation and use may cause serious results such as electric shock, combustion, explosion etc. Non-professional serviceman are prohibited to install, repair power battery and abuse it beyond specified range. Power battery damage and other losses caused by using it without observing requirements or beyond specified range will not be guaranteed. Pay attention to the following:

1. Anti-shock and anti-collision

   The battery cells of power battery are connected in series and equipped with management system and various sensor devices, so be careful when driving on uneven roads to prevent power battery from bumping.

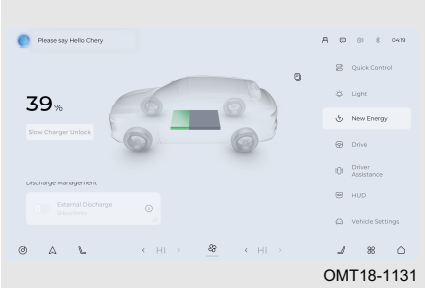
2. Heat insulation in any environment

Keeping power battery in the best operating temperature range can greatly prolong the service life of battery and improve safety performance, so try to park vehicle in heat insulation and ventilated places.

3. Moisture-proof and water-proof

Power battery is a high voltage energy-storage device with many high voltage control circuits and battery cells. The liquid entering power battery may cause short circuit, electricity leakage and corrosion of battery cells, electric circuits and connectors. Make sure that power battery will not be soaked by various liquids and moist air will not enter the power battery.

New Energy



OMT18-1131

Energy consumption list: Query the data of total mileage/total driving mileage/recent 31 mph (50 km/h since reset.

Energy flow: Display current energy flow condition of vehicle.

Slow charger unlock: Unlock the AC charging gun and stop charging.

Charging/discharging management: External discharge.

Energy management: Set battery protection mode, energy recovery intensity, pure electric mileage display and driving distance display.

More: ECO mode and disclaimer.

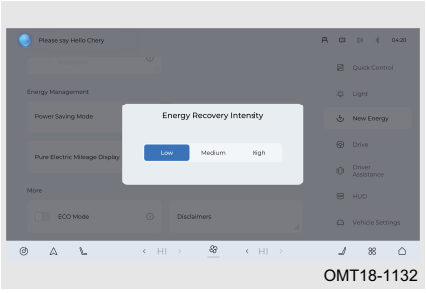
Energy Flow Condition	Description
Pure electric drive	Only motor drives the vehicle, the engine is not working.
Extended range mode	Engine charges the power battery, and motor drives the vehicle to drive.
Parallel drive	Engine and motor drive vehicle at the same time.
Engine direct drive	Engine drives vehicle directly.
Generating electricity when driving	Engine charges power battery when engine drives the vehicle.
Generating electricity when parking	Engine charges power battery when parking.
Feedback brake	Motor recovers braking energy and charges power battery.

WARNING

The pedestrian protection sound can only be turned off when there is no other road user within a short distance and the surrounding environment clearly does not require a prompt sound. As long as pedestrian is likely to appear around the vehicle, pedestrian protection sound needs to be turned on.

Energy Recovery Intensity

When vehicle is coasting, the system will convert the mechanical energy of motor into electrical energy to recover energy and charge the power battery, thus reducing energy consumption.



OMT18-1132

With vehicle in READY state, set energy recovery intensity (low/medium/high) through Audio System - Settings - New Energy.

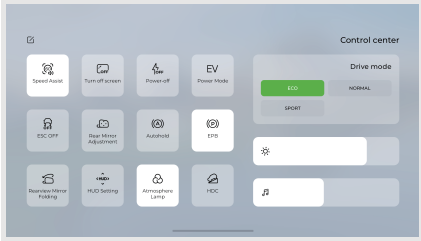
Energy Recovery	Function
Energy recovery intensity is low	The vehicle coasts for a long distance and driving comfort is better.
Energy recovery intensity is medium	It is suitable for most driving habits because it combines driving comfort and energy recovery efficiency.
Energy recovery intensity is high	Vehicle deceleration is highest and it can recover more energy.

READ

- Under conditions of a higher SOC or low ambient temperature, there may be difference in the driving experience of energy recovery.
- Energy recovery intensity is set as low or medium for a better balance of driving comfort and economy. Energy recovery intensity is set as high, which may cause a dragging feeling, so it is recommended for high speed driving.

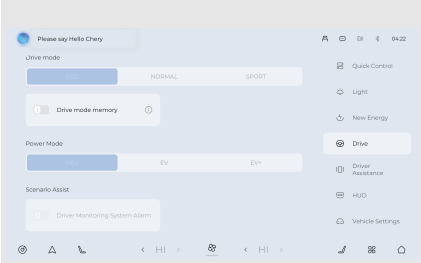
Operating Mode

Power mode



OMT18-1133

With vehicle in READY state, click power mode button (EV/HEV) on control center to switch the power mode; The corresponding mode indicator on instrument cluster comes on to prompt you that power mode is switched successfully.



OMT18-1134

With vehicle in READY state, set power mode (HEV/EV/EV+) through Audio System - Settings - Driving; The corresponding mode indicator on instrument cluster comes on to prompt you that power mode is switched successfully.



OMT18-1135

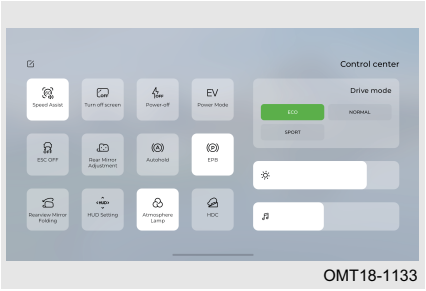
With vehicle in READY state, dial knob (EV/HEV) to switch the power mode; The corresponding mode indicator on instrument cluster comes on to prompt you that power mode is switched successfully.

Power Mode		Description
EV mode	EV	The vehicle is driven by pure electricity and the engine does not start.
	EV+	Increase the depth of discharge to provide a longer pure electric driving mileage than EV mode. It is recommended to use this mode only in an emergency to reduce the deep discharge of the battery, which is helpful for improving the maintenance of battery.
HEV mode	HEV	The vehicle is driven by hybrid power, and the engine can start or stop at any time to participate in driving or power generation according to requirements of working conditions.

READ

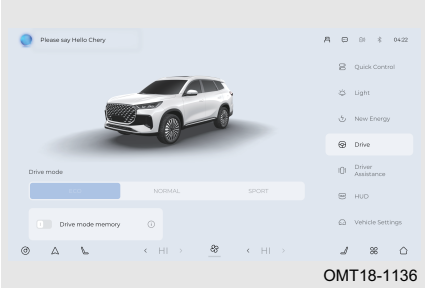
- When the power battery level is higher, the vehicle will automatically switch to electric mode (EV mode) if it is in READY state. It is recommended that you prioritize the use of electric mode (EV mode).
- With vehicle in READY state, P gear and HEV mode, when the power battery level is below a certain value, depressing the accelerator pedal can trigger the forced parking power generation function.
- When vehicle runs continuously in electric mode, pure electric driving mileage decreases with the decrease of battery level. When power battery level is too low, it will switch to HEV mode automatically.
- In some conditions (such as low battery level), it may be impossible to switch from HEV mode to electric mode, and "Current Conditions Not Met, Mode Cannot Be Switched" will be displayed on instrument cluster.
- If vehicle is used in electric mode for a long period of time, the lubrication condition of engine may deteriorate due to infrequent use, therefore, the engine will be automatically started for self-maintenance at regular intervals. Once the maintenance is completed, the engine will automatically shut down.

Drive mode



OMT18-1133

With vehicle in READY state, click drive mode button on control center to switch the driving mode; The corresponding mode indicator on instrument cluster comes on to prompt you that drive mode is switched successfully.



OMT18-1136

With vehicle in READY state, set drive mode through Audio System - Settings - Driving; The corresponding mode indicator on instrument cluster comes on to prompt you that drive mode is switched successfully.


OMT18-1137

With vehicle in READY state, turn the drive mode knob to cycle through the drive modes; The corresponding mode indicator on instrument cluster comes on to prompt you that drive mode is switched successfully.

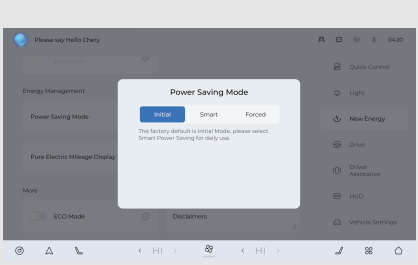
Drive Mode	Description
Normal mode	Combine vehicle power and economy, which is suitable for all kinds of roads.
Eco mode	ECO mode improves the fuel economy of the vehicle and is suitable for the flat and hard roads such as urban roads and paved roads.
Sport mode	Improve vehicle power and realizes higher response speed and driving experience. It is suitable for wide and flat roads with few vehicles (such as motorway).
Snow mode	It is suitable for hard but smooth road surface, including snow, ice, grass, gravel road, etc.

Drive Mode	Description
Mud mode	It is suitable for muddy and uneven road surfaces with a smooth and shallow mud layer or rut.
Off-road mode	Off-road mode improves the acceleration performance, enhancing the vehicle trafficability. Suitable for mountain off-road and the vehicle out of trouble.

READ

The adaptive cruise control system in Eco mode provides a gentle acceleration, and the adaptive cruise control system in sport mode provides a faster acceleration.

Power saving mode



OMT18-1139

With vehicle in READY state, set power saving mode (Initial/Smart/Forced) through Audio System - Settings - New Energy.

It is recommended to select the smart power saving mode, which can achieve a better balance of economy and power.

Power Saving Mode	Description	Common Usage Scenarios
Initial mode	The maximum battery power can be discharged to achieve the maximum pure electric driving mileage.	Suitable for users who drive daily and have charging conditions.
Smart power saving mode	Prioritize the fuel economy, intelligently select the best charging time while driving, and reserve energy for pure electric or high-power driving.	Suitable for various usage scenarios, and this mode is recommended.
Forced power saving mode	Prioritize the battery level holding to get as close as possible to the target battery level, so as to reserve energy for pure electric or high-power driving. Fuel economy will deteriorate in this mode.	Suitable for camping and other usage scenarios that require external discharging.

READ

- In non-forced power saving mode, when vehicle is powered off and then powered on again, it will enter the battery level mode memorized before powering off.
- In forced power saving mode, different target battery levels can be set based on specific needs, at the same time, you can select whether to memorize the forced power saving settings. If "Memorized" is selected, it is still the forced power saving next time the power is turned on; If "Not memorized" is selected, it will switch to Smart power saving next time the power is turned on.

Pure electric driving mileage

■ Pure electric driving mileage may be affected by the following factors:

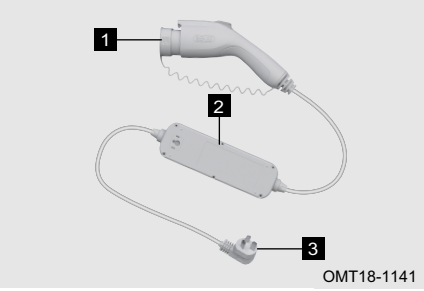
1. Driving habits: Frequent acceleration and deceleration or intense driving will result in shorter mileage compared to constant speed driving.
2. Usage of equipment such as air conditioning: Turning on the air conditioning for cooling or heating will result in shorter mileage compared to turning off.
3. Road conditions: Bumpy roads or long uphill roads will result in shorter mileage compared to flat and dry road conditions.

4. Temperature: Available power or driving mileage will decrease as the temperature decreases, and low temperature environments will result in shorter mileage compared to room temperature environments.
5. During actual usage, driving mileage will also show different variations due to weather, roads, congestion and other factors.

Charging Device

External wire harness charging port assembly (if equipped)

External wire harness charging port assembly is a charging device equipped with the vehicle. Connect the vehicle to a socket (220V/20A special AC circuit and three-hole socket) that meets the local national standard to charge the vehicle. Using special AC circuit can prevent short circuit or line trip protection due to high power when charging power battery. If special AC circuit is not used, the normal operation of other devices on the line may be effected.



1 Charging gun
2 Control box
3 Charging plug

(Due to marketdifferences, the charging plug style issubject to the actual vehicle)

⚠ WARNING

Dear users, in order for you to reasonably use the on-board AC slow charging gun for safe charging, the following tips are hereby given. Please read them carefully and use them as required.

1. Please use the national standard single-phase power supply socket with the specification of AC250V16A, and use copper core conductor with a wire diameter no less than 2.5 mm ² as the socket wiring, and it must be well grounded;
2. The front end of power supply socket must be equipped with a leakage protection air switch. The specifications of the leakage protection air switch are a single-phase rated current of 20 A and a leakage protection threshold of 30 mA;
3. It is strictly forbidden to use non-standard power supply equipment such as old socket, universal socket, adapter, adapter cable, modified socket, and grounding Device;
4. If the surface of AC slow charging gun or power supply socket is damaged, rusted, blackened, melted, deformed or other abnormalities, please do not charge;
5. It is strictly forbidden to soak the entire power supply plug or AC slow charging gun in water. It is strictly forbidden to charge outdoors in rainy and snowy weather or flammable, explosive and other dangerous environments. Do not clean the vehicle while charging;
6. When inserting and unplugging the charging plug, please hold the plug or handle, do not pull the wire, and ensure that the plug and jack are inserted in place;
7. It is strictly forbidden to unplug the vehicle plug or power supply plug during charging. If there is an emergency, please manually disconnect the leakage protection air switch to cut off the power;
8. If charging is stopped when charging does not automatically end, after the power supply socket is manually disconnected or leakage protection air switch on socket cuts off the power supply automatically, manually remove the charging gun.
9. When collecting the AC slow charging gun, it is strictly forbidden to throw it away, which will cause product damage. The dust cover must be installed in place after use;
10. During charging, if the temperature of the power supply port rises abnormally, please check if the power supply socket is aging and replace the power supply socket in time.

⚠ WARNING

- It must be well grounded during use.
- Never step on, crush, drag or bend the cable.
- When charging is stopped, unplug the charging gun first and then power supply plug.
- Never use adapter cable or adapter, and never plug and unplug with power on.
- Do not disassemble and maintain without permission, otherwise the results are at your own risk.
- When not in use, insert vehicle plug dust cover completely.
- Never expose the product to flammable gas to avoid danger.
- Make sure that charging port is dry and free of foreign matters to avoid short circuit that may cause fire.
- This product is only used when the power supply is equipped with RCD short-circuit protector.
- Never destroy the product violently, drop it or place heavy objects on the product surface.
- When using this product, confirm that the plug is tightly inserted and the indicator is normal.
- This product is only used for applicable model, and should not be used in other vehicles to avoid damage to the vehicle.
- When starting vehicle, it is necessary to confirm that charging gun has been unplugged completely, otherwise charging device and vehicle may be damaged.
- Never put this product in water, liquid or snow and rain. Avoid plugging or unplugging the plug with wet hands to avoid personal injuries.
- The operating temperature is -30℃-＋50℃. Never put the product near high-temperature objects or expose it to sunlight.
- Be sure to use genuine charging cable. If other charging cables are used, the power battery may not be charged normally and cause malfunction.
- If this product cannot charge normally, please go to authorized service centre for inspection and repair.

Control box indicators

Operating/ Malfunctioning Condition	Power Indicator (Green)	Charging Indicator (Red)	Malfunction Indicator (Red)	Charging Completion Indicator (Green)
Initial state	Remain on	Flash once	Flash once	Flash once
Waiting for charging mode	Remain on	Turn off	Turn off	Turn off
Normal charging mode	Remain on	Remain on	Turn off	Turn off
Charging completed	Remain on	Turn off	Turn off	Remain on
Self-checking	Remain on	Turn off	Flash	Turn off
Communication malfunction	Remain on	Remain on	Flash	Turn off
Input voltage overvoltage/ undervoltage	Remain on	Turn off	Remain on	Turn off
Grounded malfunction	Remain on	Turn off	Remain on	Flash
Overcurrent malfunction	Remain on	Flash	Remain on	Turn off
Leakage malfunction	Remain on	Turn off	Flash	Flash
Over temperature protection	Remain on	Remain on	Remain on	Remain on

⚠ CAUTION
Do not attempt to remove or repair control box. If above malfunctions occur, please go to authorized service station.

Troubleshooting common malfunctions

■ Unable to charge

1. Observe status of indicator and analyze it according to malfunction status.
2. Check if it is grounded well.
3. Check if voltage of power supply is normal.
4. Check if connection of vehicle is normal.

■ Intermittent charging

1. Observe status of indicator and analyze it according to malfunction status.
2. Check if 220 V AC is stable.
3. Check if temperature is too high.

■ Power on trip during charging

1. Check if it is grounded well.
2. Check if device is short circuit.
3. Check if total power of all electric equipment is too high.

■ Malfunction occurs each time power on when charging

Unplug three-pin plug and charging gun, then insert and unplug them again. If malfunction still occurs, please go to authorized service centre immediately.

Charging Operation

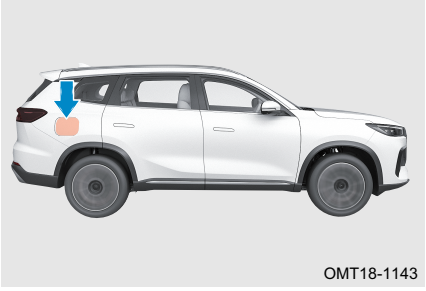
Inspection before charging

■ If any of the following conditions occur, charging is prohibited, otherwise it may cause short circuit or electric shock, resulting in personal injury.

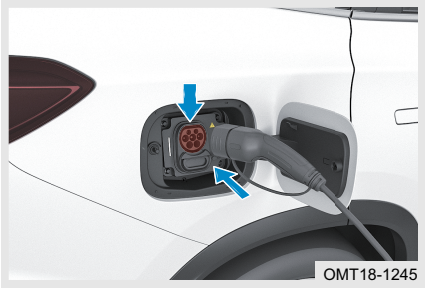
1. When the connection of discharging device is loose, do not perform charging.
2. Make sure that there is no water or foreign matter in the charging port, and the metal terminals are not rusted or corroded.
3. Make sure that the charging device is free from shell breakage, cable wear, rusty plug and other abnormal conditions.

AC charging (slow charging)

⚠ WARNING
When using household power for charging, the current specifications of the selected socket and adapter cable should not be lower than the rated current on the nameplate of on-board charging device. Ensure that the three-pin socket of the household power supply is reliably grounded, otherwise resulting in electric shock.


OMT18-1143

1. Park vehicle in charging area, shifting the gear to P and apply the parking brake;
2. Select charge now in new energy setting screen of head unit, vehicle is powered off;
3. Push center rear of the charging port cover to open it;



4. Take out the on-board charging device, insert the charging plug into power socket;
5. Open protection covers of charging port and charging gun, and insert charging gun into AC charging port until a slight sound is heard (or remove the charging gun from AC charging pile, connect the charging gun to the AC charging port and lock it firmly);
6. After charging is completed, press and hold the upper button on charging gun to unplug the charging gun from AC charging port;
7. Close protection covers of AC charging port and charging gun, and then close charging port cover.
8. Stow on-board charging device (or return the charging gun on the charging pile to its original position).

When charging is completed, or stop charging manually during charging, release the AC charging gun lock by the following operations:

- Unlock the vehicle;
- On head unit, press unlock button on slowing charging gun.

■ Charging/discharging indicator



The charging/discharging indicator is located in charging port cover. Indicate the charging/discharging status in yellow, green, blue, and red respectively.

Remains on in yellow: Waiting for charge.

Flashes in green: It is being charged.

Remains on in green: Charging is completed.

Remains on in red: Charging/discharging fault.

Flashes in blue: Discharging.

Remains on in blue: Waiting for discharge.

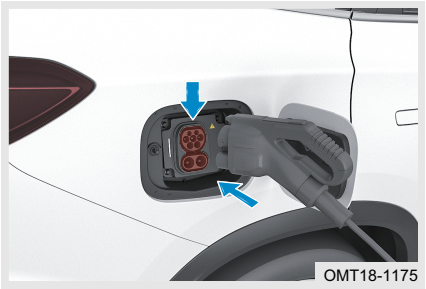
READ

- After charging with on-board charging device is completed, unplug the charging gun end first, and then unplug the connector at power supply end.
- During charge reservation, select charge reservation in head unit, the connected charging device starts charging when it arrives at the appointment time.
- Charge reservation is only suitable for AC charging and private charging piles, and needs to be realized with the charging gun connected. The charging piles that use card swiping or code scanning are not available.
- With vehicle is powered off, if hood is not fully closed after being opened, charge now, charge reservation, and appointment trip functions will not operate properly.

⚠ CAUTION

- Do not store or use charging device where the temperature is higher than 50℃, otherwise charging device may be damaged.
- When external power grid is powered off and then powered on again, charging device will start charging automatically again without reconnecting charging device.
- Before closing charging port cover, please confirm that the charging interface protective cover is closed. If the charging port cover is closed and the charging interface protective cover is open, water or dust may enter the interior of the charging port, causing a malfunction.
- When charging vehicle, power battery under floor and on-board charger in front compartment are in operating condition. At this time, "click" sound of relay engagement is heard several times, which is normal.
- After charging is completed, disconnect the charging gun of charging device, then disconnect power supply plug.
- If the vehicle is not used for a long time, it is recommended to charge and discharge once a month to prolong service life of power battery.
- Before starting vehicle, make sure that charging device is disconnected, charging port cover and charging interface protective cover are closed, otherwise, water or foreign matters may enter charging port terminals and affect normal use.
- When charging port is frozen, use a hair dryer, etc. to thaw it. If charging gun is connected forcibly in frozen condition, it will cause malfunction.
- If there is foreign matters on charging gun or in charging port, it is forbidden to connect it forcibly when it cannot be connected. Please contact the authorized service station. If it is connected forcibly, charging device and vehicle may be damaged.
- Do not use electric appliances for a long time when vehicle is powered on. When it prompts that power battery is low, insert charging gun to charge in time, or use engine to charge when vehicle is in READY mode, otherwise, it may lead to power loss of power battery and failure to start vehicle; In this case, insert charging gun to recharge it before restarting; If vehicle still cannot be started, please contact the authorized service station.
- When power meter indicator on instrument cluster enters red warning bar, it indicates that the power battery is low. It is recommended to charge when the power drops to the red warning bar or power mode is switched from EV electric mode to HEV hybrid mode. It is not recommended to charge after power is completely depleted, otherwise it will affect the service life of power battery. In oder to ensure the normal operation of hybrid transmission, when vehicle power battery is low, the vehicle will automatically switch from EV electric mode to HEV hybrid mode.

DC charging (fast charging)



1. Park vehicle in charging area, shifting the gear to P and apply the parking brake;
2. Select charge now in new energy setting screen of head unit, vehicle is powered off;
3. Push center rear of the charging port cover to open it;
4. Remove DC special charging gun from charging pile, unplug protective cover of DC charging port, and insert charging gun into DC charging port until a slight sound is heard;
5. After charging is completed, press and hold the upper button on charging gun to unplug the charging gun from DC charging port;
6. Close protection covers of DC charging port and charging gun, and then close charging port cover.

⚠ WARNING

- It is strictly forbidden to use AC/DC adapter for charging, as it will cause damage to the vehicle and personal injury.
- Never unplug charging gun forcibly when charging vehicle, otherwise it may cause damage or danger.
- Keep charging device out of the reach of children, and the persons who need care such as children are prohibited from charging.
- Refueling and charging cannot be performed at the same time. When charging gun is inserted, do not refuel and keep a sufficient safe distance from inflammables, otherwise it may damage device and cause personal injuries when charging cable is not inserted or unplugged according to regulations.

AC charging socket electronic lock

The vehicle AC charging socket is equipped with an electronic lock function, which prevents the charging gun from being plugged in and pulled out with electricity, and avoids charging safety problems.

■ Locking of electronic lock

Use 32A AC charging pile that meets the national standard for charging. After the charging gun is inserted in place and after the electronic lock is automatically locked, the vehicle will start charging.

> ⚠ WARNING
>
> After the electronic lock is locked, if you need to remove the charging gun, please unlock the electronic lock before pulling out the gun; Do not pull the gun forcibly, so as not to damage the electronic lock or charging gun and other charging equipment.

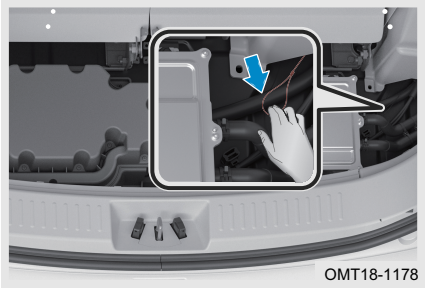
■ Unlocking of electronic lock

Normal electronic lock unlocking is divided into the following two ways:

1. Press the lock button on smart key first, then press the unlock button on it to unlock the electronic lock, and gently press the mechanical lock button on the charging gun to pull out the charging gun.
2. Without using the smart key, hold the charging gun by your hand and press the button on the charging gun with your thumb. When you hear the electronic lock unlocking sound, first lift your thumb, and then quickly press the mechanical lock button on the charging gun again to pull out the charging gun.

> READ
>
> - If the charging gun is not pulled out after the electronic lock is unlocked, the electronic lock will be automatically relocked after several seconds.
> - If the vehicle is in the unlocked state and the electronic lock is in the locked state, it is necessary to close the door and lock the vehicle before performing above electronic lock unlocking operation.

Releasing Charging Gun Manually (Only for AC Charging)


OMT18-1178

If charging gun cannot be unplugged from AC charging port by pressing and holding the upper button of charging gun, it can be released manually by using the cable.

1. Make sure that the vehicle is not charged at present according to charging information displayed on instrument cluster;
2. Open the back door and lift the luggage compartment carpet;
3. Pull charging gun release cable to release charging gun manually.

⚠ CAUTION

Release cable can only be used when charging gun cannot be released from charging port by conventional methods. Continuous use may cause damage to release cable or charging device.

⚠ WARNING

- Do not try to unplug charging gun while pulling release cable. Be sure to pull release cable before trying to unplug charging gun from charging port. Failure to do so may cause electric shock and serious injuries.
- Do not perform this operation when charging vehicle or any orange high voltage cable is exposed; Failure to do so may cause electric shock and serious injuries or vehicle damage; If you are not sure how to perform operation safely, please contact the authorized service centre immediately.

Charging Precautions

Charging precautions on rainy days

1. When charging in rain, please take care to protect the charging device from water ingress.
2. It is strictly prohibited to charge outdoors in extreme weather conditions such as heavy rain, typhoons, hail, etc., that exceed national standards, as this may result in charging not being able to be carried out, and even cause damage to the vehicle or charging device.
3. When charging is required after a rain shower, please confirm whether there is water entering the charging port at first. Do not charge when there are

obvious water stains in the charging port, as this may result in failure to charge, in severe cases, damage to the vehicle or charging device.

Precautions for end of charging

■ Manually stop charging

1. Stop charging at first, and ensure that the electronic lock is unlocked.
2. Hold the charging gun, and press and hold the button on charging gun to unplug it.
3. For AC charging, do not forcibly unplug the charging gun when electronic lock is locked, as this may damage the charging port.
4. For DC charging, never forcibly unplug the charging gun before stopping charging, as this may damage the charging port and pose a risk of electric shock.
5. After charging is completed, it is necessary to ensure that charging gun has been unplugged completely before starting vehicle, otherwise charging device and vehicle may be damaged.
6. After unplugging the charging gun, please ensure that the charging port protective cover and charging port cover are in closed condition, so as to prevent water or foreign objects from entering the charging port and affecting the normal use.

■ Automatically stop charging

1. After charging is completed, please unlock first, and then unplug the charging plug.
2. After charging is completed, it is necessary to ensure that charging gun has been unplugged completely before starting vehicle, otherwise charging device and vehicle may be damaged.
3. After unplugging the charging gun, please ensure that the charging port protective cover and charging port cover are in closed condition, so as to prevent water or foreign objects from entering the charging port and affecting the normal use.

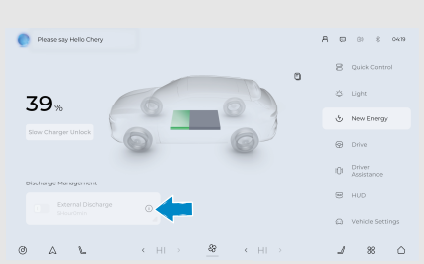
The charging performance of vehicle is affected when the battery temperature is too low or too high

1. If the charging port cover or charging gun is frozen due to weather or other reasons, do not open the charging port cover or unplug the charging gun forcibly.
2. When charging at low temperature, the battery thermal management system will be in operation, but the charging time will be extended and the heating power consumption will increase, which is normal.
3. In northern regions with low temperature, it is recommended that users perform charging in a heated room.

4. In northern regions with low temperature, it is recommended that you charge immediately after using the vehicle, as the battery temperature will be relatively high at this time, resulting in better charging performance.
5. In southern regions with high temperature, it is recommended that users charge in a cool and ventilated place, and do not charge in direct sunlight or in air.

External Discharging

The external discharging function uses the new energy vehicle as a power supply. Through the external discharging device (220 V/16 A) provided with vehicle, it can draw power and discharge externally, meeting the voltage requirements of general household appliances (220 V). It can be used for outdoor camping, barbecue, cooking, and other scenarios, satisfying your power needs outdoors.



OMT18-1179

With vehicle powered on, turn on/off external discharging function under charging/discharging management screen of head unit system. Before unplugging the discharging gun, it is necessary to turn External Discharge to OFF.

Usage precautions

- Avoid vehicle crushing, falling, and human trampling when using.
- Store the product in a cool and dry place when not using it.
- Ensure that the standard plug matches the specification of the product's power strip before use.
- Never contact metal terminals of the discharging power strip or vehicle charging port when discharging.
- During discharging, if any abnormal condition occurs, such as odor or smoke, please stop using it immediately.
- During discharging, never place device in luggage compartment, under the front of vehicle or near tyre.
- During use, never drag the wire forcibly to avoid tension or squeezing.
- Never fall the device or pull the cable directly to move the this device. Handle it gently when moving it.
- When gun head and socket are separated and not in use temporarily, they should be covered with protective covers or properly protected.
- Do not use the power strip if its surface is damaged, rusty, broken, or the connection is loose.

- Before use, please ensure that there are no abnormalities such as damage on the surface of discharging gun, cable, and discharging power strip in the discharging device.
- If gun head is dirty or damp, please cut off the power supply first, and then use a dry and clean cloth to wipe the gun head, and ensure that the discharging gun head is clean.

Discharging operation

■ Inspection before discharging

If any of the following conditions occur, external discharge operation is prohibited, otherwise it may cause short circuit or electric shock, resulting in personal injury:

1. External discharging operation is prohibited if the connection of the external discharging device is loose.
2. Make sure that there is no water or foreign matter in the AC charging port, and the metal terminals are not rusted or corroded.
3. Make sure that the external discharging device is free from shell breakage, cable wear, rusty plug and other abnormal conditions.

■ External discharging operation

1. The vehicle is in a stationary state, gear position in P, battery and fuel are sufficient.
2. Turn on external discharging function through head unit, open charging port cover and AC charging port protective cover.
3. Insert discharging gun into AC charging port and lock securely.
4. Press the switch button on the discharging socket, and the red indicator light on the power strip remains on, indicating that the socket can be used.
5. After the discharging device is connected, the vehicle begins to discharge, the discharging indicator flashes, and the vehicle displays discharging information.
6. After discharging is completed, disconnect load (external electric appliances).
7. Turn off the external discharging function through head unit, and then press and hold upper button on discharging gun to unplug it from AC charging port.
8. Close AC charging port protective cover and charging port cover. After discharging is completed, put the discharging device into luggage compartment storage box.

READ

- When inserting DC charging gun, the external discharging function is not available.
- Before external discharging, please make sure that battery and fuel are sufficient, otherwise the external discharging function may not operate properly.
- During external discharging, the cumulative power of the external electrical appliances cannot exceed 3.3 kw, otherwise the external discharging function will stop operating.
- With vehicle powered on, if power battery is low during external discharging, the engine will automatically start to charge the power battery, which is a normal phenomenon.
- When vehicle is powered off and connected to external electrical appliances without output for a long time, the static power consumption of vehicle will increase. It is recommended that you unplug the discharging gun when not using the external electrical appliances.

Safety warning for discharging

- Never use unqualified products.
- Use special charging device for electric vehicles that meets relevant national standards.
- Before driving, please ensure that the discharging device is unplugged and the charging port cover is closed.
- Do not modify, remove or repair the charging device and related ports to avoid charging malfunction and causing fire.
- After an external discharging of vehicle, the radiator fan and air conditioning compressor may automatically turn on and operate for battery cooling, which is normal.
- Please discharge in a relatively safe environment (e. g. avoid hazardous chemicals, fire sources, heat sources, lightning, flammable and explosive environments).
- To avoid damaging the vehicle, do not shake the discharging gun when discharging, as this may damage the charging port of vehicle. During discharging, do not perform repair on the vehicle.
- It is forbidden for minors to perform discharging operations or touch and use discharging device. Discharging gun is a high voltage electrical device. Do not let minors approach it when discharging.
- During discharging, if vehicle or discharging device is abnormal (e.g., odor, smoke, etc.), please stop discharging immediately and contact the authorized service station.

Low-speed Pedestrian Warning Sound

Because the noise of electric vehicles is relatively low when driving at low speed, it is difficult for pedestrians nearby to perceive it. In order to improve driving safety, this function can send alarm sound when the vehicle speed is less than 18 mph (30 km/h) to remind pedestrians nearby to perceive it.

- When the vehicle is driving with vehicle speed below 18 mph (30 km/h), the warning sound will increase with the increase of the vehicle speed.
- When the vehicle is not in Park (P) and is stationary, the system also can send warning sound.

5-12. Data Privacy

Chery Automobile Co., Ltd. (hereinafter referred to as 'we' or'us') is the manufacturer responsible for privacy by design (PbD) of your vehicle.

Driver Drowsiness and Attention Warning (DDAW)

Our vehicle's Driver Drowsiness Alert Warning (DDAW) system works to detect signs of driver fatigue. It does this by monitoring a range of parameters within a recent time window, including the proportion of time your eyes are open, blink rate, direction of gaze, length of gaze, yawning, as well as vehicular parameters such as speed, gear position, car door status, steering wheel angle, and direction of turn. The system uses this information to make a comprehensive judgement about driver fatigue and issue alerts as necessary.

⚠ CAUTION

Please be aware that the data collected by the DDAW system is required by regulations, collected for immediate processing, and is not stored. According to the regulations, DDAW will be enabled by default. The collected data is used for algorithmic recognition and discarded immediately after use. All data is processed within the vehicle and does not leave the vehicle.

Advanced Driver Assistance System (ADAS)

In order to implement the drive assistance function, the car side will use the vehicle's front, flanks, and rear cameras to collect image data on the road during driving or after parking, image data surrounding the vehicle to complete drive assistance function. The camera recordings use the vehicle’s external cameras to learn how to recognize things like lane lines, street signs and parking signs and traffic light.

⚠ CAUTION

Please be aware that the processing data within our system is designed for immediate use and analysis. We do not store any of the data that is processed. This data is necessary for legitimate interests and also to fulfil legal and other official requirements.

Emergency call (eCall)

In the event when you are in a traffic accident or you press the SOS button for roadside assistance, the eCall system on the in-vehicle terminal will provide your vehicle location, contact information and additional required information to the Public Safety Answering Point (PSAP) which is set up by government authority. The collection and sharing of these data comply with the requirements of laws and regulations, which only includes GPS, speed, directions of your vehicle, the time when you trigger the eCall, the eCall status, Vehicle Identification Number (VIN), vehicle model, power type and Recorded voice data.

⚠ CAUTION

We collect this data to fulfil our legal obligations outlined in vehicle security regulations.

6-1. Emergency Call Function

ECALL (If Equipped)..... 242

6-2. Handling Vehicle in Emergency

Hazard Light..... 242

Reflective Vest..... 243

Warning Triangle..... 243

Spare Tools..... 244

6-3. If You Have a Flat Tyre When Driving

Repairing Tyre in Emergency..... 244

6-4. If Your Vehicle Overheats

6-5. Replacing Fuse

Fuse..... 248

Fuse and Relay Box Layout..... 249

Checking Fuse..... 250

Replacing Fuse..... 251

6-6. Vehicle Towing

Towing Hook (If Equipped)..... 252

Towing Vehicle..... 253

Installing Towing Eyelet..... 254

6-7. If Battery is Depleted

Removing Battery..... 255

Jump-starting..... 256

6-1. Emergency Call Function

ECALL (If Equipped)


OMT18-5011

ECALL is a kind of emergency call function. When vehicle is involved in a certain level of impact (airbag inflated) or when driver or passenger is in an emergency and rescue is required, emergency information can be sent to service center by operating button manually, then the center will track vehicle location and promptly offer rescue according to received information.

READ

- Information communicated to the PSAP includes: vehicle type, number of seated passengers detected in the vehicle, GPS coordinates, and the VIN.
- Emergency call services are not available in all countries or regions.
- Emergency call only operates over a mobile network with an adequate signal.

6-2. Handling Vehicle in Emergency

During driving, most of dangers happen suddenly, only making correct judgment in an instant, operating properly and controlling vehicle in such case can prevent accident or reduce accident loss and personal injuries.

Hazard Light

If the vehicle is stopped at a place where traffic accidents may occur, always turn on hazard lights to warn other vehicle drivers. Stop vehicle at a place as far away from the road as possible.


OMT18-5020

Press hazard light switch to turn on and press it again to turn off.

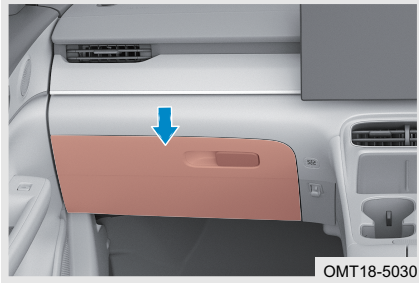
READ

- When the vehicle is powered off, hazard warning light can still work.
- When the airbags operates, the hazard light function is activated automatically.

CAUTION

To prevent battery from being depleted, do not turn on the hazard lights more than necessary when the engine is not running.

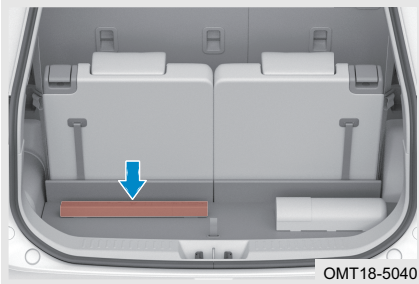
Reflective Vest


OMT18-5030

The vehicle is equipped with a reflective vest. It is recommended to place the reflective vest in the glove box (if equipped).

When the driver encounters a sudden failure to stop to handle or when an accident happens, wear the reflective vest with reflective strip facing outwards. It can warn other vehicles to avoid secondary accidents.

Warning Triangle


OMT18-5040

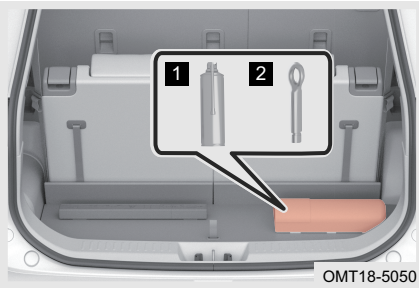
Warning triangle is located under the luggage compartment carpet.

When the driver encounters a sudden failure and stops the vehicle for repair or when an accident happens, the reflective performance of warning triangle can warn other vehicles to avoid secondary accidents.

CAUTION

- On a normal road, the warning triangle should be placed over 50 m away from your vehicle in oncoming direction.
- On a highway, the warning triangle should be place over 150 m away.
- In rain or on a corner, it should be place over 150 m away to allow vehicles behind notice the triangle as early as possible.

Spare Tools



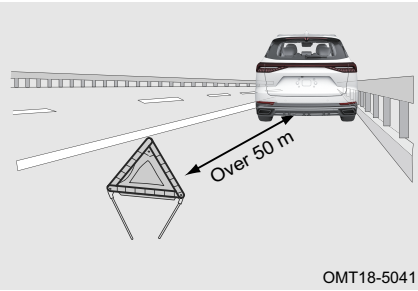
1 Tyre repair liquid
2 Towing eyelet

READ

If the wheel bolt is equipped with bolt trim cover, please use wheel bolt cover remover to remove it.

6-3. If You Have a Flat Tyre When Driving

If a tyre goes flat during driving, slow down gradually, grip the steering wheel with two hands and keep driving straightly. Stop vehicle to a safe place away from the traffic road. Park it on firm and level ground as much as possible. Avoid stopping on center or divider of a highway.



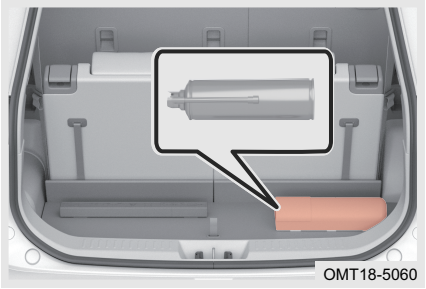
1. Apply parking brake and shift the shift lever to P position;
2. Turn off engine and turn on hazard lights;
3. Have everyone get out of vehicle and stay away from traffic;
4. Wear the reflective vest, take the warning triangle out from luggage compartment and place it over 50 - 150 m away behind the vehicle (- depending on actual condition).

CAUTION

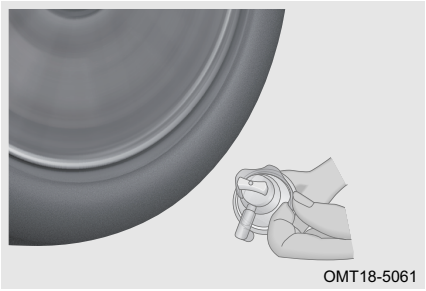
Do not continue driving with a flat tyre. Driving even a short distance can damage the tyre beyond repair.

Repairing Tyre in Emergency

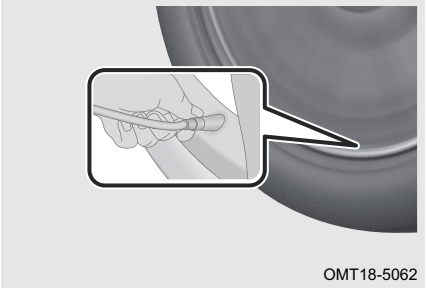
Emergency tyre repair instructions for vehicles equipped with automatic inflation tyre repair liquid in case of tyre leakage:


OMT18-5060

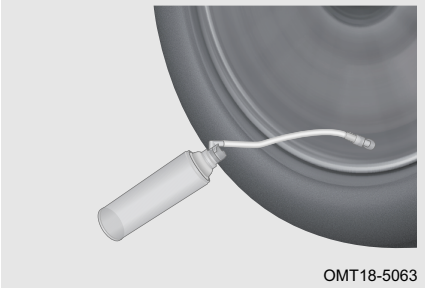
1. Open back door, lift the luggage compartment carpet and take out the automatic inflation tyre repair liquid;


OMT18-5061

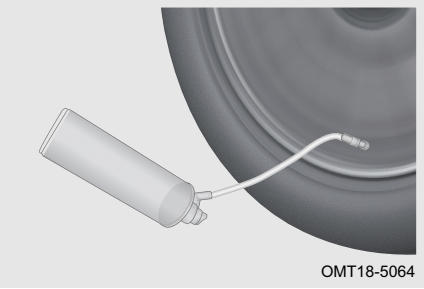
2. Shake the automatic inflation tyre repair liquid well before use, and then tear off the safety belt of the junction valve;


OMT18-5062

3. Tighten the junction valve of the automatic inflation tyre repair liquid to the tyre valve;


OMT18-5063

4. Turn the red valve clockwise and place the bottle upside down to start inflating the tyre;


OMT18-5064

5. After the automatic inflation tyre repair liquid is filled, close the valve counterclockwise and screw out the junction valve. Then immediately drive for 10 miles (10 km) or more to complete the repair. Please go to the authorized service centre or professional tyre repair shop for repair and replace as soon as possible.

Note: Before using the automatic inflation tyre repair liquid, please check the validity period indicated on the automatic inflation tyre repair liquid tank to ensure that it is used within the validity period.

⚠ CAUTION

- The automatic inflation tyre repair liquid is a disposable consumable (for one wheel only), you can go to authorized service centre for purchase.
- After using the automatic inflation tyre repair liquid, it supports the vehicle to drive continuously for 310 miles (500 km) or more. For the first 10 miles (10 km), please drive at the speed of < 49 miles (80 km/m). After 10 miles (10 km), drive the vehicle at normal speed. It is recommended that you go to the authorized service centre or professional tyre repair shop for repair and replace as soon as possible.

⚠ WARNING

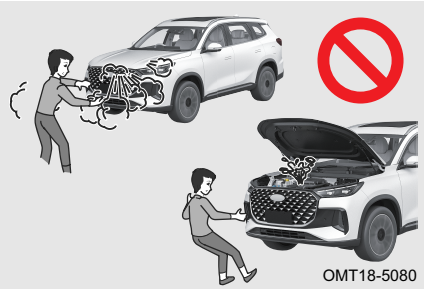
- Avoid the automatic inflation tyre repair liquid contacting with the skin or eyes and keep it out of the reach of children.
- If you continue to drive the vehicle in the case of tyre puncture and air leakage, it is easy to have tyre blowout, endangering personal safety.
- The automatic inflation tyre repair liquid is used for repairing tread puncture repair, other parts such as shoulder, sidewall and valve nozzle damage are not in the scope of repair.
- When it is required to pull out the puncture object before repairing, make sure to move the vehicle slightly so that the puncture hole is facing downward at 6 o'clock position before filling the tyre with automatic inflation tyre repair liquid.
- If the automatic inflation tyre repair liquid splashes onto the tyre or rim during use, wash it with clean water or wipe it with cloth; if the liquid accidentally gets into your eyes, please wash with clean water and seek medical attention immediately.
- When the product is used in (-40 ° C -0 ° C) ambient temperature, please warm up the product to 0 ° C or more at the heater in the vehicle to increase the filling efficiency of the automatic inflation tyre repair liquid.
- It is effective to repair the puncture diameter of ⩽ 6mm, within which the puncture object can be pulled out for repair; when the puncture diameter is > 6mm, please contact the authorized service centre immediately.
- After using the automatic inflation tyre repair liquid, immediately drive the vehicle for 10 miles (10 km) or more. Never stop and stay. Please go to the authorized service centre or professional tyre repair shop for repair and replace as soon as possible.
- The storage temperature of automatic inflation tyre repair liquid is -40 °C - 70 °C. It is forbidden to store in the vehicle under direct sunlight; and it is forbidden to contact with open fire; please be sure to store it in the tool box securely according to the requirements, do not put it in the cabin.

6-4. If Your Vehicle Overheats

If engine coolant temperature in meter alarms, it indicates that the engine coolant temperature is high, please take the following measures immediately.

1. Run safely off the road immediately, stop vehicle at a safe area, apply parking brake and shift gear position to P, then turn on the hazard warning lights. Turn off the air conditioning if it is being used.
2. If coolant or steam sprays out from coolant reservoir, stop the engine immediately. Open hood after the steam subsides. If there is no coolant or steam spraying out, keep the engine idling and check if radiator fan is operating.

If the radiator fan does not operate, stop the engine immediately and contact the authorized service centre for inspection and repair.



If there is steam or coolant spraying out, it indicates that pressure in cooling system is very high. To avoid personal injury, keep the hood closed until there is no steam spraying out.

Never attempt to open the coolant reservoir cap when the engine and radiator are hot. Serious scalding injury will be caused by hot coolant and steam blown out under pressure.

3. Open hood, check that radiator, hoses and underneath of the vehicle have no obvious coolant leakage. However, water dripping from air conditioning after use is normal.

⚠ WARNING

When engine is running, keep hands and clothing away from moving fan and engine drive belt. Even if engine has been turned off, fan may still run.

4. If coolant leakage is found, stop the engine immediately and contact the authorized service centre for inspection and repair.
5. If there are no obvious leakages, check if coolant level is within the range. If it is at or below "MIN", add coolant to the level between "MIN" and "MAX". Only use recommended coolant type .

⚠ CAUTION

- In emergency, water can be used if coolant is unavailable. Please go to the authorized service centre to replace coolant.
- If engine overheats frequently, please contact the authorized service centre to have cooling system inspected and repaired.

6-5. Replacing Fuse

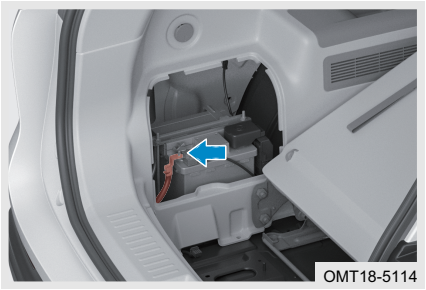
Fuse

Fuses are used to protect electrical circuits and appliances from overload. If any electrical appliance does not operate, it may be caused by a blown fuse. If this happens, check and replace the fuses as necessary.

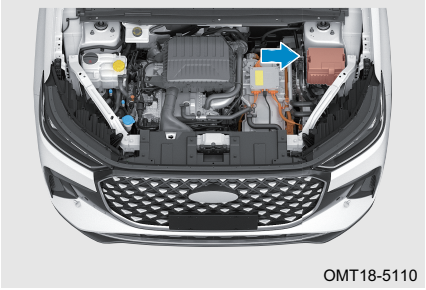
Fuse and Relay Box Layout

Front compartment fuse and relay box

Engine compartment fuse and relay box is located on the left side of engine compartment (indicated by arrow).


OMT18-5114

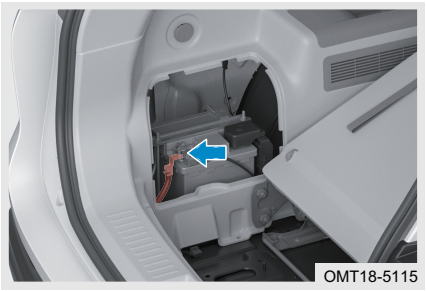
1. Turn off all the electrical appliances, and power off the vehicle;
2. Open the tail door and remove the left trunk guard Plate, disconnect battery (12 volts) negative cable;

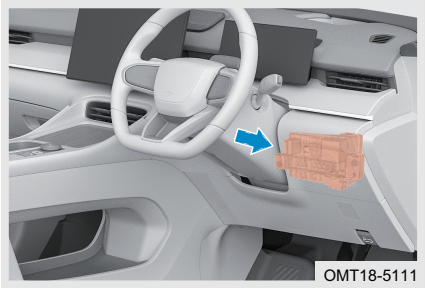

OMT18-5110

3. Remove the engine compartment fuse and relay box cover to inspect or replace the fuse.

Instrument panel fuse and relay box

Instrument panel fuse and relay box is located behind instrument panel left lower protector assembly.


OMT18-5115

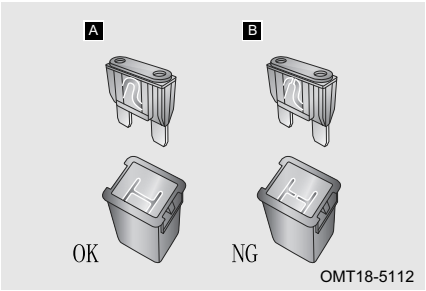

OMT18-5111

1. Turn off all the electrical appliances, and power off the vehicle;
2. Open the tail door and remove the left trunk guard Plate, disconnect battery (12 volts) negative cable;
3. Remove the instrument panel left lower protector assembly to inspect or replace the fuse.

READ

- Check suspected fuses according to the fuse and relay layout.
- To prevent damage to the vehicle, be careful when removing/installing the instrument panel storage box. Please contact the authorized service centre as necessary.
- The fuse box must be clean, keep it away from dampness when opening, as dirt and moisture may damage the electrical system.

Checking Fuse



OMT18-5112

If electrical appliances do not work, please check the relevant fuses.

Check if the fuse is normal according to the illustration.

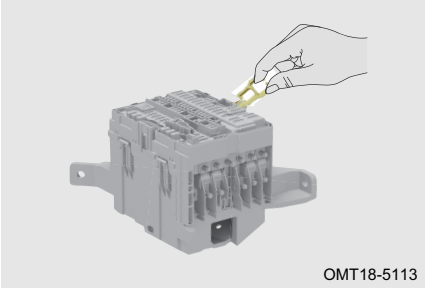
A Good fuse.

B Blown fuse.

READ

If the fuses are blown, they must be replaced.

Replacing Fuse



1. Turn off all the electrical appliances and power off the vehicle;
2. Check suspected fuses according to the fuse and relay box layout;
3. Pull the suspected fuse out by a fuse remover;
4. Check if the fuse is blown. If you are not sure whether the fuse has blown, replace the suspected fuse with spare fuse that has the same amperage rating;
5. Only the fuse that has the same amperage rating as the original one can be installed. You can see the amperage rating on the schematic diagram inside the fuse box cover.

If a spare fuse is unavailable, you can use a fuse with the same specification from other unimportant electrical appliances (such as multimedia) in an emergency.

It is better to purchase a set of spare fuses and put them in vehicle for emergency use.

⚠ CAUTION

- Never use a fuse with a higher amperage rating, otherwise electrical appliances may overload. If the fuse with specified amperage rating is still blown, it indicates that there is a malfunction on circuit. Please contact the authorized service centre for inspection and repair immediately.
- Never replace a fuse with a wire, even as a temporary replacement. Otherwise, this may cause serious damage to electrical appliances, or even fire.
- Do not modify fuse or fuse box.

⚠ WARNING

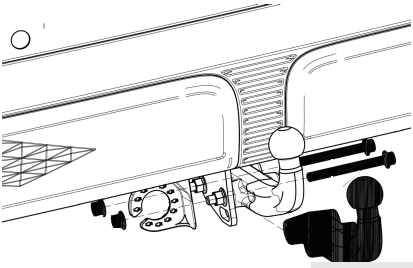
Only install an original fuse that has same amperage rating and model as used one.

6-6. Vehicle Towing

Towing Hook (If Equipped)

Use a suitable towing hook when towing a trailer. It is recommended to use the original towing hook. To ensure a smooth towing experience, the original hole drilled by vehicle manufacturer should be used. For more information, please consult professional maintenance personnel.

Towing hook mounting point



OMT1E-5200

Vertical load: maximum 75kg

Horizontal traction 750kg.

READ

When towing , do not use the following safety systems (these systems may automatically turn off if original towing hook is used):

- Blind Spot Monitor (BSM) system
- Rear Cross Traffic Alert (RCTA) system
- Parking assist system (rear)

For details about the installation process, consult the authorized service station.

The towing hook can be used by vehicle pulling another that is not roadworthy.

READ

- For a better power experience during towing, it is recommended to charge the vehicle in advance before towing so that the SOC is 50% or more.
- For your driving safety, it is not recommended to perform towing operations when the ambient temperature is 40°C or higher.

CAUTION

Damage caused by towing a trailer is not covered by the warranty.

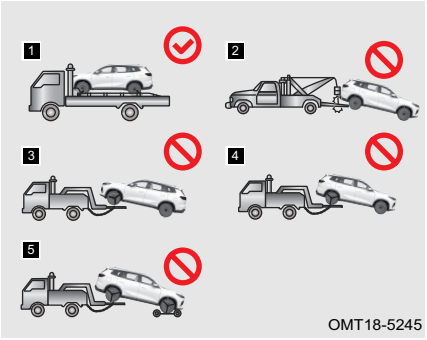
⚠ WARNING
When towing , the original towing hook must be used. Do not attempt to use other types of towing hook.

Towing Vehicle

If the vehicle needs to be towed, it is recommended to contact authorized service centre or professional towing services department, or ask for help from the roadside rescue service organization you have joined.

⚠ WARNING
• Damage caused by transportation is not covered by the warranty. • To transport the vehicle, follow the instructions below strictly. • Do not tow your vehicle only with ropes or chains by other vehicles.

Using platform trailer



Please use **1** platform rescue vehicle to load your vehicle.

Vehicle towing precautions are as follow:

- Tow with four wheels off ground. Do not use the rescue method **2** **3** **4** **5** shown in the figure.
- Before towing, shift the gear position to N, turn on hazard light, and close the doors.
- During towing, nobody is allowed to seat in the accident vehicle.

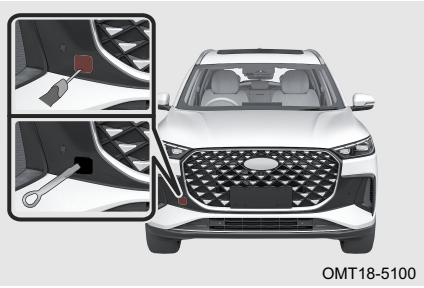
⚠ CAUTION
Do not move the vehicle with forklift when vehicle is broken down.

⚠ WARNING

- No person or object is allowed behind the trailer when the vehicle is pulled onto the platform rescue vehicle, otherwise it may cause personal injury or death.
- The vehicle can only be towed away from the site if there is no safety risk. If the vehicle power battery pack has deformation, leakage, smoke, etc., the safety risk should be solved first.

Installing Towing Eyelet

■ Installation position of front towing eyelet

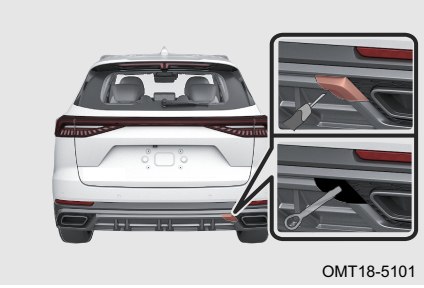


OMT18-5100

Use a screwdriver with its tip wrapped with tape to remove the towing eyelet hole cover;

Install towing eyelet into eyelet hole in a clockwise direction. Then tighten it firmly with wheel bolt wrench.

■ Installation position of rear towing eyelet



OMT18-5101

Installation position of rear towing eyelet is located on the bottom of rear right side of the vehicle.

Use a screwdriver with its tip wrapped with tape to remove the towing eyelet hole cover;

Install towing eyelet into eyelet hole in a clockwise direction. Then tighten it firmly with wheel bolt wrench.

⚠ CAUTION

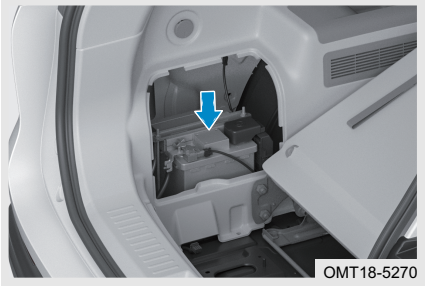
- Only use specified towing eyelet. Otherwise, vehicle may be damaged.
- Towing rope or towing bar can be installed only when towing eyelet is installed in place.
- Both drivers must be familiar with the towing process, otherwise they cannot carry out towing work.
- Drive the vehicle slowly and smoothly when towing. Impact due to excessive tension may damage the vehicle.

⚠ WARNING

Make sure that towing eyelet is installed securely. Otherwise, the towing eyelet may become loose when towing, which may cause an accident, resulting in death or serious injury.

6-7. If Battery is Depleted

Removing Battery


OMT18-5270

The following steps must be followed when removing and installing the battery:

1. Turn off all the electrical appliances, and power off the vehicle;
2. Open the luggage compartment, remove the left protector;
3. Remove the negative (-) battery terminal cable;
4. Remove the positive (+) battery terminal cable;
5. Remove the battery holder and the battery;
6. Install a new battery that has same specification as used one. Install the new battery properly in the reverse order of removal.

ENVIRONMENTAL PROTECTION

The used battery contains sulfuric acid and lead and should not be disposed at will. Please handle according to the local laws and regulations or discard at a local qualified waste disposal station.

⚠ CAUTION

Be careful to avoid the metal tool contacting both electrodes of the battery at the same time or touching the positive electrode and the vehicle body at the same time.

⚠ WARNING

- Do not leave battery within the reach of children.
- Do not smoke, use matches, cigarette lighters or open flames near the battery.
- Always wear gloves and safety glasses during operation, as battery acid is strongly corrosive. Do not lean on the battery.
- If acid spills on your skin or clothes, the liquid must be neutralized with alkaline water (soap), and then wash it with clean water. Get emergency medical attention immediately if necessary.

Jump-starting

To avoid vehicle damage or personal injury due to improper operation, if you are unsure about how to follow the procedure, We strongly recommends that you seek help from professional serviceman or at an authorized service station.

⚠ CAUTION

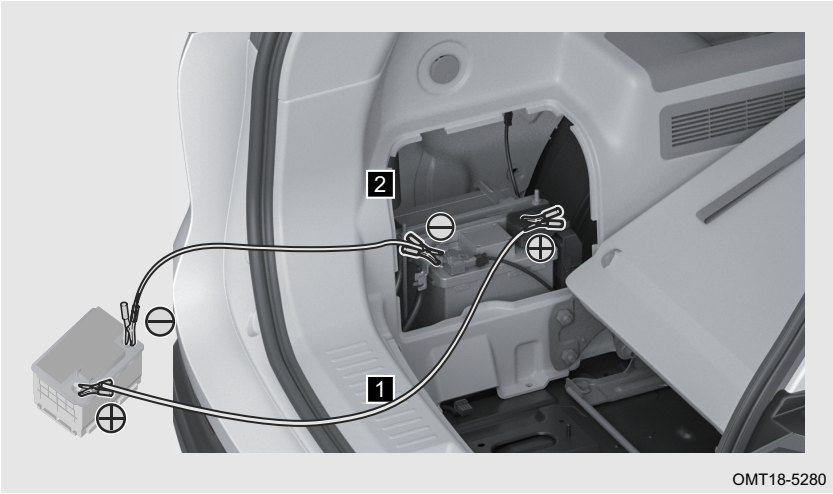
Battery voltage used for jump starting should be 12 - 13 V. Do not jump start unless you are sure that the battery voltage is correct.

⚠ WARNING

- The specified jumper cables should be used.
- Do not use cigarette lighters or allow open flame near the battery.

■ Jump-starting procedures

1. Turn off all unnecessary electrical appliances. If booster battery is installed in another vehicle, make sure of no contact between vehicles.
2. Connect cables in order shown in illustration below.



1 Connect positive (+) terminal of discharged battery to positive (+) terminal of supporting vehicle battery with positive cable.

2 Connect one end of negative cable to negative (-) terminal of supporting vehicle battery, and then connect the other end of the cable to unpainted metallic part of discharged engine to secure the jumper cable.

3. Start engine in normal way. After starting, run it for several minutes by lightly depressing accelerator pedal.
4. Disconnect cables in reverse order of connecting (negative cable first and then the positive cable).

⚠ CAUTION

- During connecting, do not shift to D position to ensure that the vehicle is in the parking state.
- Do not lean on the battery when connecting.
- Never allow the clamps of the jumper cables to contact with each other or touch other metal parts of the vehicle.
- Do not connect cable to or near any part that moves when engine cranks.
- If the first starting attempt is not successful, check that if clamps on jumper cables are tight and restart the engine in normal way. If it still cannot start, please contact the authorized service centre for inspection and repair as soon as possible.

7-1. Repair and Maintenance

Repair and Maintenance ... 260

Authorized Service centre is at Your Service.... 260

Reading Vehicle Identification Code Information..... 261

Safety Check..... 261

7-2. Normal Maintenance

Normal Maintenance 262

Power Battery..... 263

Checking Oil Level 266

Checking Transmission Fluid Level 268

Checking Brake Fluid Level..... 268

Checking Coolant Level 269

Checking Radiator and Condenser 269

Checking Tyre Inflation Pressure..... 270

Checking Tyres..... 271

Tyre Rotation..... 272

Checking Battery..... 272

Checking Air Conditioning Filter 273

Checking Windshield Washer Fluid 273

Checking Wiper Blade 273

7-3. Regular Maintenance

Technical Data..... 275

7-1. Repair and Maintenance

Repair and Maintenance

There are two types of repair and maintenance: One is normal maintenance, which can be done by the customers; the other is scheduled maintenance, inspection and repair, which needs to be completed by authorized service station.

For the details of regular maintenance, inspection and repair methods, please refer to "Regular Maintenance" in this section; Regular maintenance can be helpful for you to find and eliminate potential dangers in time to prevent malfunctions. Scheduled maintenance of your vehicle is essential. Please strictly follow the maintenance schedule of "User Manual" to perform maintenance, ensuring that your vehicle maintains the best performance and good operating conditions, thus effectively extending the service life of the vehicle.

Please use the recommended fluid, or your vehicle may be damaged.

Authorized Service centre is at Your Service

Authorized service station

Only OEM parts and materials can extend your vehicle's service life. We only supplies OEM parts to authorized service centre located worldwide. Therefore, only OEM parts from authorized service centre can be used.

Authorized service centre offers a professional service. For vehicle service, please remember that your authorized service centre knows your vehicle best, and has the professional technicians and OEM parts to complete the job to the highest standard.

ENVIRONMENTAL PROTECTION
Used engine oil, brake fluid, coolant, steering fluid (if equipped), batteries and tyres should only be disposed of by qualified waste disposal agencies or after consultation with manufacturers, and should not be taken out with household waste or disposed of into the communal drainage system.

Service arrangements

When go to authorized service centre for vehicle service, make sure to carry all required documents. Not all the work to be performed is covered by the warranty. For detailed expenses, consult your service advisor. Keep a service record on your vehicle. Usually, this record can provide valuable reference information.

Prepare a list sheet covering vehicle malfunctions and specific service items. If you have had an accident or any item serviced is not included in the service records, let your service advisor know.

If you list many service items and you must fetch your vehicle on the day, communicate with your advisor to rank the items by priority.

Reading Vehicle Identification Code Information

The vehicle Identification code information can be readout by installing the malfunction diagnosis device, used for inspections and maintenance.

Do not install electrical components other than the diagnosis device to the connector. Doing so may cause unexpected problems to occur, such as having a bad effect on electronics or damaging the battery.

Safety Check

It is better to perform a safety check before driving vehicle, which will improve your driving safety and enjoyment.

⚠ WARNING
While inspecting vehicle, do not start the vehicle.

Daily check
Check whether paint surface is scratched, light shade is damaged, body is tilted, wheel bolts are missed or loosened, water/oil leakage of chassis occurs, door/hood/back door/glass is damaged.
Check that engine oil level, brake fluid level, coolant level, steering fluid level (if equipped) and windshield washer fluid level is normal.
Check cold tyre pressure and conditions (such as: wear, swelling, aging cracks, mechanical damages, etc.). Also check the spare tyre.
Check whether seat belt buckles fasten securely. Make sure belts are not worn or frayed.
Check whether lighting of lights is normal.
Check whether meter indicators are normal.

Monthly check
Clean vehicle surface, inside of hood (dust on surface of radiator and condenser, and remaining oil of engine body), vehicle interior and luggage compartment.
Check assembly, pipes, hoses and tanks for leaks; Check whether battery and cable are corroded and loosened; Check whether circuits are damaged, loosened or disconnected; Check that no water/oil leakage has occurred.
Check whether air condition is operating properly.

Check whether parking brake is operating properly.
Check whether spare fuses and spare tools (such as: jack, wheel bolt wrench, etc.) are equipped.

READ
Used engine oil, brake fluid, coolant, batteries and tyres can be disposed only by qualified waste disposal agencies, or consult supporting manufacturers for disposal of them. It is not permitted to dispose of them with household waste or discharge them into public drainage system.

7-2. Normal Maintenance

Normal Maintenance

Be sure to follow the correct maintenance procedures provided in this section if you perform do-it-yourself maintenance.

This section only lists the simple maintenance instructions which can be performed by customers. However, there are still many items that have to be maintained by qualified technicians with special tools.

⚠ CAUTION

- Check for any tools or cloths that may have been left behind before closing the hood.
- Do not drive vehicle with the air filter removed, otherwise, excessive engine wear could occur.
- Correctly add fluid to the appropriate level. If some fluid splashes onto the vehicle, be sure to immediately wash it off with a wet cloth, to avoid damage to the painted surface.

⚠ WARNING

- If the engine is very hot, do not open the coolant reservoir cap to prevent scalding injury.
- When the engine is running, keep hands, clothing and tools away from engine drive belts and cooling fan.
- Do not smoke near fuel filler or battery, otherwise, it may cause sparks or open flames, resulting in a fire.
- There is a high voltage in the electronic ignition system. Do not touch these components while the engine is running or the vehicle power is turned on.
- Right after driving, engine, radiator, exhaust manifold and cylinder head will be very hot, so never touch them. Prevent any loose clothing from getting caught in the fan and causing personal injury because the cooling fan may automatically start and run at any time.

Power Battery

Basic function of power battery

The power battery is the power and energy source of vehicle and can be charged and discharged repeatedly. The power battery is charged by an external power supply, and can also be charged by means of energy recovery when braking or coasting.

The vehicle has intelligent recharging function. When the function is triggered, 12 V battery will be charged by power battery. If the vehicle is placed in a high-temperature environment, it is also possible to trigger the power battery cooling request during intelligent recharging process, which will activate the A/C to cool the power battery to avoid damage to the power battery. Therefore, when the vehicle is started again after being placed for a period of time, SOC or pure electric driving mileage displayed on instrument cluster will decrease, which is a normal phenomenon.

Power battery is a special chemical product, which needs to be used and maintained properly, so proper daily use and maintenance is very important for performance maintenance. At the same time, power battery will decline naturally due to chemical characteristics. Therefore, for vehicles that have been used for a period of time, when trip mileage decreases after battery is fully charged, it is recommended to go to the authorized service centre for inspection.

The optimal ambient temperature and charging temperature range of the power battery is 25 ± 5℃. When the temperature is too high or too low, the battery will limit the output power, and the pure electric driving mileage will be shortened. It is recommended that you use the vehicle in an environment above -20 ℃; If it is in a special circumstance, it is recommended to switch the vehicle to HEV mode and use the engine to help drive the vehicle.

When the power battery is low, it is recommended to charge immediately or switch power mode from EV to HEV, and it is not recommended to charge after power battery is depleted, otherwise service life will be affected. In oder to ensure the normal operation of hybrid transmission, when power battery is low, the power mode will switch form EV to HEV automatically.

Do not use electric appliances for a long time when the vehicle is not started. When it prompts that power battery is low, insert charging gun to charge in time, or use engine to charge when vehicle is in READY mode, otherwise, it may lead to power loss of power battery and failure to start vehicle; In this case, insert charging gun to recharge it before restarting; If vehicle still cannot be started, please contact authorized service station.

The power battery is located under the body floor, and please drive carefully and prevent it from bumping when the vehicle passes over bumpy roads or is driven on bumpy roads. If driving on a rough road or wading road (over 15 cm deep), please slow down.

■ Due to the influence of chemical characteristics of power battery itself and for the purpose of better protecting the power battery, it is normal if the following conditions exist:

1. The power performance of the vehicle will be weakened when the power battery is in low charge.
2. When driving in high or low temperatures, there may be an increase in power consumption and a reduction in driving range.
3. The charge and discharge performance of power battery at high or low temperature will be weakened, and the charging time will become longer, which is a normal phenomenon.
4. When the power battery is nearly fully charged, it will automatically switch to trickle charging mode, which may extend the final charging time. There may be deviations in the estimated charging time displayed on the large screen and instrument cluster of the vehicle.

■ Since the performance of power battery will decline in low temperature environment, the following treatment methods will help you to use the vehicle better:

1. If ambient temperature is lower than -10℃, it is recommended to park vehicle in a warm house or a garage with room temperature.
2. If there is no warm house or garage with room temperature, the vehicle has charging and heating functions of plug-in charging gun. If charging gun is connected, it is recommended to select travel reservation function half an hour before departure, which can increase power battery temperature to the best state and turn on air conditioning in advance, so that you can have a better driving experience.

■ In order to prevent damage to the power battery, the performance of the power battery will be reduced in high/low temperature environments. If the ambient temperature is too high or too low, the charging and discharging power will be affected.

■ When the vehicle is not used for a long time, the following methods will help power battery to be in the best state:

1. When the vehicle is not used for a long time and SOC is less than 20%, charge it as soon as possible.
2. When the vehicle is not used for a long time, park it in a place where the ambient temperature is lower than 45 ℃ and there is no ponding, and try to avoid direct sunlight.
3. When the vehicle is not used for a long time, SOC displayed on instrument cluster may be inaccurate. Do not judge the remaining power of power battery based on SOC, and charge battery fully before driving.
4. When the vehicle is not used for a long time, charge 12 V battery for 15 - 30 minutes once a month (with the vehicle in READY state, keep charging for 15 - 30 minutes).

5. When the vehicle is not used for a long time, power battery system should be fully charged once a month and then discharged to maintain the SOC at about 50%; Failure to do so may cause excessive discharge of power battery.

⚠ WARNING

- Once the vehicle is powered on, the high voltage circuit will be in a conducting state. Non-professional personnels are strictly prohibited from conducting any electrical maintenance or repairs on the vehicle while the power is on.
- Non-professional personnels are strictly prohibited to open the power battery. The units or individuals should be responsible for environmental pollution or safety accidents caused by removal or disassembly of the battery without permission.
- If the power battery fails, the battery is depleted. Even with 12 V external power supply, the vehicle cannot be jump started. please contact the authorized service centre in time, never repair it without authorization.

Power battery recovery

■ Recover and disposal range

Power battery whose residual capacity and charge and discharge performance after using cannot guarantee the vehicle normal driving, or is not used again after it is removed due to other reasons.

■ Recover and disposal process

The power battery is installed on the vehicle chassis, which consists of lithium battery cells. Disposal at will can cause pollution and harm to the environment.

According to relevant regulations, vehicle owner is obliged to hand over used power battery to recycling service stations. It is strictly forbidden to hand over used power battery to other units or individuals. The vehicle owner shall be responsible for environmental pollution or safety accidents caused by unauthorized removal or disassembly of the power battery.

Be sure to dispose according to the following information or requirements. For details on the recycling and disposal of power battery, please contact the authorized service station.

1. The temporary recycling service centre for vehicle used power battery is the local authorized service station.
2. The disassembly of power battery must be performed by professional serviceman with certification qualification of power battery supplier.
3. The power battery belongs to the 9th category of dangerous goods and must be transported by vehicles with the 9th category of dangerous goods transportation qualification.

4. The removed power battery should be stored in a normal temperature, dry environment, away from flammable materials, heat sources, water sources and other hazards.

> ⚠ WARNING
>
> - Do not dispose of power battery by yourself.
> - Do not sell, transfer or modify power battery.
> - When power battery needs to be repaired, removed, replaced and disposed, always contact the authorized service station.

Usage precautions for power battery

Power battery belongs to high voltage energy-storage device and dangerous goods. It is necessary to contact the authorized service centre for installation and maintenance of power battery by professional serviceman who must observe related safety regulations strictly; Non-professional serviceman and improper operation and use may cause serious results such as electric shock, combustion, explosion etc. Non-professional serviceman are prohibited to install, repair power battery and abuse it beyond specified range. Power battery damage and other losses caused by using it without observing requirements or beyond specified range will not be guaranteed. Pay attention to the following:

1. Anti-shock and anti-collision

   The battery cells of power battery are connected in series and equipped with management system and various sensor devices, so be careful when driving on uneven roads to prevent power battery from bumping.

2. Heat insulation in any environment

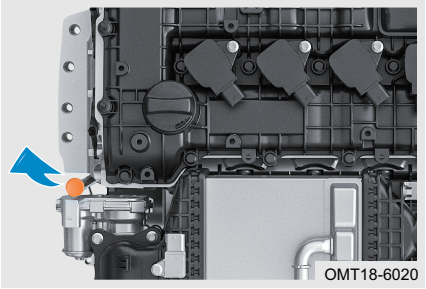
   Keeping power battery in the best operating temperature range can greatly prolong the service life of battery and improve safety performance, so try to park vehicle in heat insulation and ventilated places.

3. Moisture-proof and water-proof

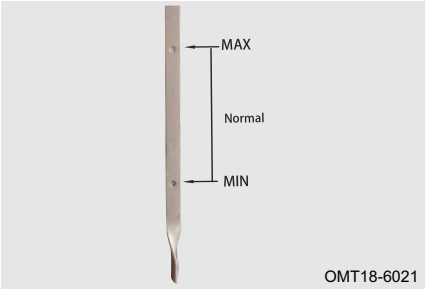
   Power battery is a high voltage energy-storage device with many high voltage control circuits and battery cells. The liquid entering power battery may cause short circuit, electricity leakage and corrosion of battery cells, electric circuits and connectors. Make sure that power battery will not be soaked by various liquids and moist air will not enter the power battery.

Checking Oil Level

With the engine stalling and cooled down, check the oil level with the dipstick.



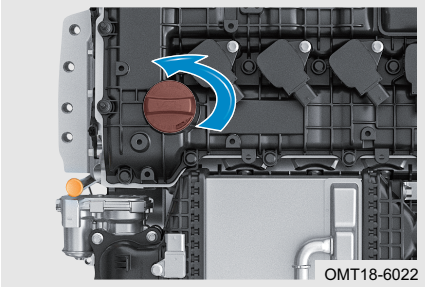
1. Warm up the engine and then stop the vehicle on a level ground. Wait about 5 minutes after turning off engine;
2. Open hood, pull the dipstick out and wipe it with a clean and lint-free cloth;
3. Insert the dipstick to the bottom uniformly and slowly;
4. Leave the vehicle as is for approximately 3 seconds, pull the dipstick out again and check if oil level is correct;
5. Repeat above steps 3 times to improve the accuracy of inspection.



Put a cloth under the dipstick to avoid oil spilling onto engine or vehicle body.

Do not check the oil level immediately after the engine warms up, and wait until the oil returns into the bottom of engine.

■ Adding engine oil



1. Turn the engine oil filler cap counterclockwise to open it;
2. Use the funnel to add a proper amount of engine oil and check the oil level with a dipstick again;
3. When the level reaches within the correct range, turn the engine oil filler cap clockwise to tighten it.

ENVIRONMENTAL PROTECTION

Do not discard the waste engine oil and filter in household waste, down the drain or spill on to the ground. Otherwise, it will cause serious environmental pollution. Please dispose it according to the local regulations regarding environmental protection.

⚠ CAUTION

- Do not overfill oil, or it may cause damage to engine.
- If the engine oil is replaced, the oil filter must be replaced.
- Only use recommended engine oil. For detailed information about engine oil capacity and type, please refer to "Vehicle Specifications".
- The engine oil filler cap cannot be placed up side down after removal to prevent misjudgment caused by oil backflow, and prevent oil flowed through seal ring from overflowing by itself after assembly again, which results in an illusion of oil leakage from the engine oil filler cap.
- If oil is accidentally spilled on the surface of the engine during refueling, clean the spilled oil with canvas and other tools before tightening the engine oil filler cap.

Checking Transmission Fluid Level

Checking, adding and replacing of transmission fluid should be done by professionals. Please contact the authorized service station.

Checking Brake Fluid Level



OMT18-6030

Brake fluid level should be between the "MIN" and "MAX" marks. If the level is at or below the "MIN" mark, add brake fluid and contact authorized service centre for inspection and repair immediately.

READ

The brake fluid reservoir shapes are different depending on the configuration. Please refer to the actual vehicle configuration.

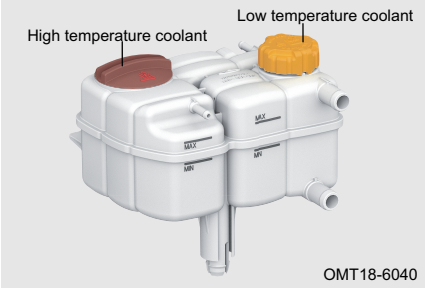
⚠ CAUTION

- If brake fluid splashes onto the painted surface of vehicle body, be sure to clean it with a wet sponge or wash it off with water to avoid corroding the parts or painted surface.
- As the brake fluid is highly absorbent, do not leave the brake fluid reservoir cap open for a long period of time.
- Only recommended brake fluid can be used. Otherwise, all the direct or indirect loss incurred are at user's own risk.

⚠ WARNING

Never allow brake fluid to contact your skin or eyes. If the brake fluid splashes into your eyes or on your skin, flush the area immediately with a great quantity of water. Get emergency medical attention immediately if necessary.

Checking Coolant Level



1 High Temperature Coolant

2 Low Temperature Coolant

When vehicle is cold, the coolant level should be between the "MAX" and "MIN" marks. If the level is at or below the "MIN" mark, add coolant and contact authorized service centre for inspection and repair immediately.

⚠ CAUTION

- If coolant level falls rapidly, check radiator, water hose and water pump for leakage.
- Do not use poor quality coolant, because the engine becomes excessively hot as running and inferior coolant cannot provide sufficient cooling and corrosion protection.
- Only recommended coolant can be used. Otherwise, all the direct or indirect loss incurred are at user's own risk.

⚠ WARNING

- The coolant is poisonous, so pay extreme caution not to spray the fluid on any part of the vehicle, human body or ground when adding coolant. If the coolant accidentally gets on your skin or eyes, please wash the affected area with a great quantity of water and consult a doctor immediately.
- When engine is hot, the cooling system will be under high pressure. In this case, do not open the coolant reservoir cap, otherwise, the escaping steam may cause scalding injury.

Checking Radiator and Condenser

After the vehicle runs for a period of time, the front surface of condenser and radiator could be blocked with some insects, leaves and other objects, which could affect the performance of air conditioning and cooling system, resulting in air conditioning operating improperly and cooling system overheating. It is necessary to clean radiator and condenser at that time.

Radiator: It is recommended to clean the radiator surface every year. With engine turned off and cooled down, use compressed air or water to clean the radiator fins and blow off the insects and leaves, etc. Air and water pressure should not exceed 150 kPa. Otherwise, the radiator fins could be damaged.

Condenser: Clean the condenser by blowing air from rear to front through the radiator when the engine is turned off and cools down.

⚠ CAUTION

- The material of radiator fins has good thermal conductivity, which is used to cool the coolant. Do not brush the fins, or it may cause damage to the fins, affecting the cooling effect.
- Do not spray water on the hot radiator while the engine is hot, otherwise, the generated high temperature steam may result in personal injury. Clean the radiator only when the engine is turned off and cools down.

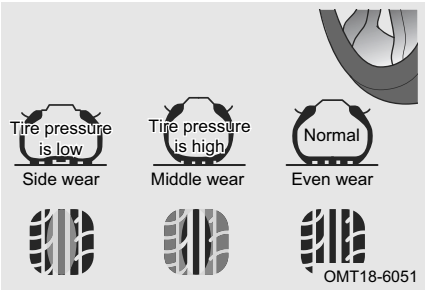
Checking Tyre Inflation Pressure

You should check the tyre inflation pressure at least once a month and correct the pressure as required.

For provisions about the tyre inflation pressure, please refer to the tyre pressure label on driver side B pillar (subject to actual vehicle) for details.

Incorrect tyre inflation pressure will lead to excessive fuel consumption, shorten the tyre service life and reduce the vehicle stability. Therefore, you should drive the vehicle with proper tyre pressure.

Be sure to keep proper tyre inflation pressure. Otherwise, the following conditions may occur and result in an accident, causing death or serious injury.



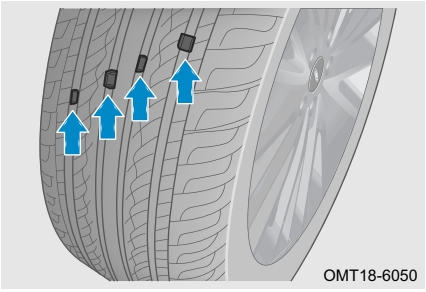
- Excessive wear;
- Uneven wear;
- Poor handling;
- Possibility of blowouts resulting from overheated tyres;
- Poor sealing of the tyre bead;
- Wheel deformation or tyre separation;
- A greater possibility of tyre damage caused by poor road conditions.

⚠ CAUTION

- Use a tyre pressure gauge to check cold tyre inflation pressure. Visual inspection of a tyre may cause inaccurate estimation on inflation pressure.
- It is normal that the tyre inflation pressure increases after driving for a period of time.
- Be sure to install tyre valve caps properly. Otherwise, dirt could get into the valve core and cause blockage. If the caps are lost, install new ones immediately.
- If the tyre needs to be inflated frequently, please contact authorized service centre for inspection and repair as soon as possible.

Checking Tyres

Check if there are any cuts, foreign matters and uneven wear on tyre tread regularly.



Check the tyre tread for tread wear mark. When tread wear reaches its limit, tread will be in the same plane as the wear band. If such condition occurs, it indicates that performance and safety of tyre seriously decrease, and replacement is necessary.

If a tyre often leaks or cannot be properly repaired due to a cut or other damages, it should be replaced.

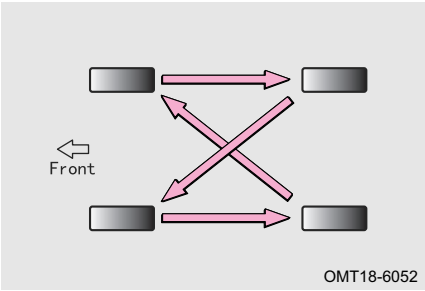
ENVIRONMENTAL PROTECTION

Always discard a used tyre carefully. It should be handled according to the local regulations regarding to environmental protection.

⚠ CAUTION

If air leakage occurs while driving, do not continue to drive. Driving even a short distance can damage a tyre beyond repair.

Tyre Rotation



To equalize tyre wear and extend tyre service life, we recommend that you should rotate your tyres regularly. It is recommended to rotate your tyres every 10,000 km. Tyre rotation cycle may vary according to driver driving habits and road surface conditions.

READ

It is recommended to check and adjust the four wheel alignment during the first maintenance. Perform inspection and adjustment every 20,000 km (this is normal maintenance item which is not covered by warranty).

WARNING

Observe the following precautions. Failure to do so may affect handling performance, which may lead to an accident, resulting in death or serious injury:

- Speedometer is affected by tyre size. If the tyre size (diameter) is different from the genuine one, it will not display accurate speed, and may result in accidents, such accidents loss are not covered by the warranty;
- Do not mix tyres from different manufacturers, of different models or tread patterns;
- Do not mix tyres with remarkably different tread wear;
- Do not mix differently constructed tyres (radial, bias-belted or bias-ply tyres);
- Do not use tyres that were used on another vehicle;
- Do not use tyres if you do not know how they were used previously.

Checking Battery

Check and make sure that the battery terminals are not corroded and that there are no loose connections, external cracks, or loose fixing clamps.

Your vehicle is equipped with a maintenance-free battery. The new battery should have the same specifications with the genuine one. We recommend that you should go to a authorized service centre for battery replacement.

Checking Air Conditioning Filter

Air conditioning filter can prevent outside dust from entering vehicle through air conditioning outlets when driving for a long period of time, and it may be blocked after being used for a long time. If operational efficiency of air conditioning decreases significantly, check filter element and replace it as necessary.

READ

- The replacement of air conditioning filter should be performed by professionals, please contact authorized service station.
- Using air conditioning with filter removed may result in degradation of dustproof performance, affecting efficiency of air conditioning.
- A/C system for some models can achieve PM2.5 protection, please check with your actual vehicle.
- A/C system for some models can achieve N95 protection, please check with your actual vehicle.

Checking Windshield Washer Fluid

If no washer fluid can be sprayed from washer nozzles, stop operating washers and check if it is necessary to add washer fluid. If it cannot operate properly after adding washer fluid, please go to authorized service centre for inspection and repair.

CAUTION

- Never add antifreeze in the windshield washer fluid, because antifreeze will damage the body painted surface.
- Do not use water as washer fluid when temperature is below zero. Otherwise, water will be frozen, causing damage to washer.
- The capacity of washer fluid reservoir is 4.5 L. When the washer fluid level is low, low washer fluid level warning light will come on and a faults message will appear on the instrument cluster (if equipped), please refer to the actual vehicle.

Checking Wiper Blade

Check the roughness of wiper blade by sliding on its edge using your finger. Wiper blade will not work effectively, if it is too rough.

⚠ CAUTION

- In winter, make sure that the wiper blades are not frozen to the glass before operating them to avoid damaging the wiper blades.
- Do not use the wiper blades to remove frost or ice covered on the windshield.
- Butter, silicone and fuel may cause the wiper blades to operate improperly, and it is recommended to clean the wiper blades with glass washer fluid.
- When the blades are lifted for maintenance, the center connector position of the blades should be properly picked up, it is required to enter maintenance mode for some models (for details, please refer to "Wiper System").
- If there are any chips on the windscreen from gravel, please repair quickly.

■ Maintaining wiper blades

- Do not use high-pressure water jet to directly wash the wiper blades while washing the vehicle, or the wiper blades could be damaged.
- In order to prevent the formation of build up that obscures view, it is recommended to clean wiper blades using glass detergent regularly once a week.
- After washing the vehicle in the automatic car washer, apply pure water to rinse the windshield and blades, to remove the remaining wax layer.
- For safety, it is recommended to replace the wiper blades 1 to 2 times a year, the wiper blades can be purchased at authorized service station.
- Do not operate wiper blades when windshield is dry. Doing so may scratch glass, resulting in permanent damage to wiper blades.
- Do not clean the windshield with fuel, nail polish remover, paint thinner or similar liquid, which can damage the wiper blades.
- Avoid using glass plating agent and hydrophobic agent on the front and rear windshield glass. The hydrophobic layer will fall off slowly after using, resulting in uneven friction of windshield and abnormal noise of wiper shaking.
- When the windshield surface is frosted or frozen, or when dry soil, insect, sticker or other solid particles are attached to the windshield surface, clean them with a wet cloth in time. Do not use a dry cloth or remove them with wiper blades directly, otherwise it will damage the windshield and wiper blades.

■ Using wipers

- Do not swing the wiper arm manually, otherwise it may damage the wiper.
- When there is snow, leaves, branch and other objects, they should be cleaned before operating the wiper.

- Washer fluid should be added as soon as is needed, please use the windshield washer fluid as specified in this manual, and do not use tap water instead.
- In cold weather, always check if the wiper blades are frozen on the windshield before using. If they are frozen on the windshield, always unfreeze before using. Failure to do so may cause damage to the wiper motor and wiper blades. Unfreezing method: Use air conditioning heating and ventilation device to warm up. Do not pour hot water directly to blades, otherwise, windshield may break or wiper blades may deform.

7-3. Regular Maintenance

Technical Data

Fluid Name	Specification	After-sale Maintenance
Refrigerant	R1234yf	550 ± 15 g
Compressor oil	PVE	180 ± 10 g

READ

Contains fluorinated greenhouse gases and CO2 equivalent 0.000275t.

CAUTION

- Filling amount is equal to discharging amount when there is no oil leakage for automatic transmission, please go to authorized service centre for details.
- Only genuine parts and fluids can be used, otherwise your claim rights will be affected.
- For engine oil and transmission fluid, only use brands and specifications recommended by authorized service station.
- The above filling amount is only for reference. The specific fluid amount should be based on the actual vehicle measurement.

SPECIFICATION

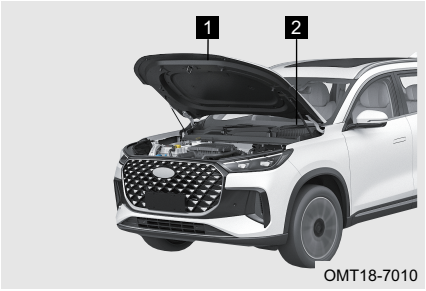
8-1. Label Location

8-2. Vehicle Specifications

Vehicle Dimensions 280
Vehicle Type..... 281
Vehicle Weight..... 281
Vehicle Performance 282
Engine Performance..... 282
Drive Motor 283
Fuel System 283
Suspension System..... 284
Power Battery..... 284
Battery..... 285
Wheel Alignment..... 285
Wheels and Tyres 285
Light Bulb Specification..... 286
Vehicle Components That Are Not Included in the Vehicle Size 286
Your Rights 288
Contact Us 288

8-1. Label Location

■ Vehicle Identification Number (VIN)

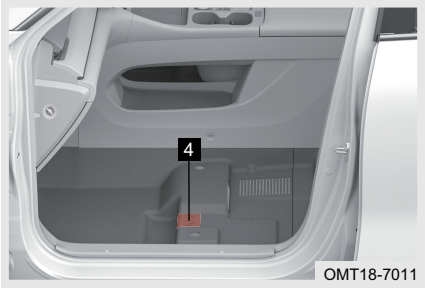


1 VIN is located on upper left of driver side instrument panel, and can be seen from the outside through the windshield.

2 VIN is stamped on hood inner panel.



3 VIN is located below the tailgate.



4 Vehicle name plate is fixed on right quarter outer panel.

READ

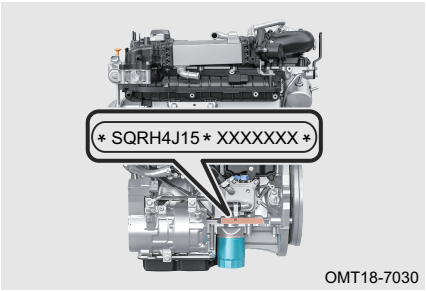
- It is forbidden to cover, paint, weld, cut, drill or remove vehicle identification number and areas around it.
- If VIN needs to be read, it is recommended to read the data through the operation of authorized service centre professional serviceman.
- Other VIN locations on the vehicle: On the front left door inner panel assembly, right B-pillar inner panel assembly, front roof beam, rear floor as well as sheet metal area under rear seat; and at the drip channel on upper part of luggage compartment or on the inner panel of luggage compartment (please refer to the actual vehicle).

■ Vehicle name plate



Vehicle name plate is fixed on right quarter outer panel.

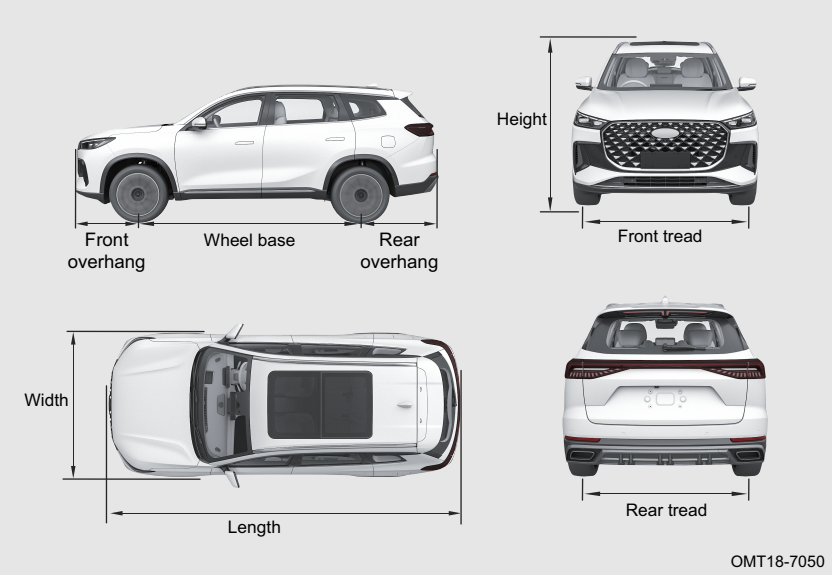
■ Engine number



Engine number is located on engine block as shown in the illustration.

8-2. Vehicle Specifications

Vehicle Dimensions



Overall Size	Length (mm)	4,725
	Width (mm)	1,860
	Height (mm)	1,705
Wheel Base (mm)		2,710
Tread	Front (mm)	1,582
	Rear (mm)	1,604
Overhang	Front (mm)	915
	Rear (mm)	1,100

Vehicle Type

Vehicle Type	4 × 2 front-wheel drive, front-wheel steering, transverse front-engine, 2- compartment, 5-door, 7-seat, integral body, right-hand drive
Engine Model	SQRH4J15
Engine Type	Vertical, 4-cylinder in-line, watercooled, 4-stroke, double overhead camshaft, turbocharging, intercooler
Fuel Supply Type	Direct injection
Transmission Model	351HHB

Vehicle Weight

Vehicle Curb Weight (kg)		1,916	2,063
Vehicle Curb Axle Weight	Front Axle (kg)	1,053	1,064
	Rear Axle (kg)	863	999
Manufacturer Maximum Total Weight (kg)		1,916	2,063
Manufacturer Maximum Total Axle Weight	Front Axle (kg)	1,053	1,064
	Rear Axle (kg)	863	999
Seating Capacity (Including Driver) (Person)		7	

⚠ WARNING

Please follow the vehicle load specified in the instruction manual and do not exceed the allowable total weight. Otherwise, the brake and handling performance of the vehicle may change and may cause an personal injury and accident.

Vehicle Performance

Passing Performance	Minimum Ground Clearance (mm)		142
	Minimum Turning Diameter (m)	Left Turn (m)	11.2
		Right Turn (m)	11.2
	Approach Angle (°)		19.9
	Departure Angle (°)		18.7
Power Performance	Maximum Vehicle Speed (km/h)		180
	Maximum Gradeability (%)		40

Engine Performance

Engine Mode	SQRH4J15
Cylinder Bore Diameter (mm)	72
Piston Stroke (mm)	92
Displacement (mL)	1,499
Compression Ratio	14.5 : 1
Maximum Net Power (kW)	105
Maximum Net Power Speed (r/min)	5,200
Maximum Net Torque (N•m)	215
Maximum Net Torque Speed (r/min)	2,500

Drive Motor

Model	KPTZ220YMDA0
Type	Permanent magnet synchronous motor
Cooling Method	Oil cooling
Rated Voltage (V)	350
Rated Power (kw)	70
Peek Power (kw)	150
Rated Torque (N·m)	140
Peak Torque (N·m)	310
Rated Speed (rpm)	4775
Peak Speed (rpm)	16000

Fuel System

Fuel Type*1	Unleaded gasoline with an octane nùmber of 95 or higher
	E5/E10
Fuel Tank Type	Metal fuel tank
Fuel Tank Total Capacity	60 L
Fuel Pump	Electric fuel pump

*1: Please use the fuel recommended by authorized dealers.

READ

- E10 fuel can generally be compatible with E5 fuel, and usually will notcause damace to automotive products.
- Vehicle with catalytic converters can only use unleaded gasoline. In order to avoid the accident of filling wrong fuel type, the fuel filler pipe adopts a neck-type fuel filler port design, and only the standard unleaded gasoline fuel gun can be used for fueling operation.

⚠ CAUTION
• Use only the fuel type we recommend. • The use of off-specification gasoline may cause damage to the engine and such damage is not covered under warranty. • Using leaded gasoline will cause three-way catalytic converter to lose its effectiveness and emission control system to function improperly. • If you accidentally fill leaded gasoline to the oil tank and start the engine (-even if only a small amount is filled), it will cause permanent damage to the catalytic converter. Therefore, if you accidentally fill leaded gasoline, please go to authorized service centre for inspection and repair immediately.

Suspension System

Front Suspension	Macpherson type independent suspension, unadjustable height, with anti-roll stabilizer bar, cone coiled spring, double adjustable shock absorber
Rear Suspension	Multi-link type independent suspension, unadjustable height, with anti-roll stabilizer bar, cone coiled spring, double adjustable shock absorber

Power Battery

Items	Parameter
Model	113AEA
Rated Voltage (V)	350.5
Rated Capacity (kwh)	18.4
Maximum Charge Power (kw 10s 25℃ 50%SOC)	73
Maximum Discharge Power (kw 10s 25℃ 50%SOC)	161
Cell Voltage (V)	3.13
Charging Operating Temperature Range of Battery System (℃)	-20~60
Discharging Operating Temperature Range of Battery System (℃)	-30~60
Drive Mode	2WD

Battery

Battery Model	40AH 12V

Wheel Alignment

Front Wheel	Front Wheel Camber	－25′ ± 45′
	Kingpin Caster Angle	4°28′ ± 60′
	Kingpin Inclination Angle	13°43′ ± 60′
	Front Wheel Toe-in	5′ ± 5′ (one side)
Rear Wheel	Rear Wheel Camber	－42′ ± 30′
	Rear Wheel Toe-in	5′ ± 10′ (one side)

Wheels and Tyres

Tyre Model		235/50 R19
Rim Model		19X7J
Cold Tyre Inflation Pressure (kPa) (Unladen)	Front Wheel	230
	Rear Wheel	230
Tightening Torque of Wheel bolts		M14:180 ± 18 N·m
Wheel dynamic balance requirements for vehicle with a maximum design speed of more than 100 km/h		Allowable residual balanced mass: Clamp balance block side ⩽ 8 g, paste balance block side ⩽ 10 g

READ

The tyre inflation pressures listed in the table apply to cold tyres. The pressure increases slightly when the tyre is heated, but it is unnecessary to lower the pressure.

⚠ CAUTION

- Tyre inflation pressure should be checked at least once a month, and tyre pressure is especially important at high speeds.
- In order to facilitate you to find the specified value for inflation pressure, there is adhesive sticker label on the driver doorsill, which is marked with the specified value for cold tyre inflation pressure.

Light Bulb Specification

Light Bulb Name	Nominal Light Source (Type/Model)	Replacement Advice
Headlights	LED	Replaced by authorized service station
Rear Fog Light	LED	Replaced by authorized service station
Daytime Running Light	LED	Replaced by authorized service station
Front Position Light	LED	Replaced by authorized service station
Rear Position Light	LED	Replaced by authorized service station
Brake Light	LED	Replaced by authorized service station
High Mounted Stop Light	LED	Replaced by authorized service station
Reverse light	LED	Replaced by authorized service station
Front Turn Signal Light	LED	Replaced by authorized service station
Side Turn Signal Light	LED	Replaced by authorized service station
Rear Turn Signal Light	LED	Replaced by authorized service station
License Plate Light	LED	Replaced by authorized service station

Note: The light bulb specifications are for reference only. Please refer to the actual vehicle configuration.

Vehicle Components That Are Not Included in the Vehicle Size

Components not included in vehicle length size

The following devices do not have laden function and their sizes are not more than 50 mm beyond the vehicle front end or rear end, and fillet radius of edge and corner is no less than 5 mm:

— Wiper and washer

— Outer identification, including registered trademark, manufacturer name, origin, model name and type, engine emission, transmission type, driving type and other distinguishing identification of the vehicle

— Lights and light signal device

— Anti-collision rubber block and equivalent

— External sunshade device

— Customs sealing device and its protective device

— Device used to fixed raincloth and its protective device

— Locking device, hinge, handle, controller, switch

— Step plate (or ladder), vehicle climbing step plate and handle on top of bumper used for cleaning windows.

— Rear emblem plate with LOGO

— Removable trailer or towing device

— Exhaust tail pipe

Components not included in the vehicle width measurements:

— Indirect view device

— School bus stop plate in inoperative state

The following devices do not have laden function and their one side size exceeds the side of vehicle for no more than 50 mm, and fillet radius of edge and corner is no less than 5 mm:

— Outer identification, including registered trademark, manufacturer name, origin, model name and type, engine emission, transmission type, driving type and other distinguishing identification of the vehicle

— Lights and light signal device

— Anti-collision rubber block and equivalent

— Customs sealing device and its protective device

— Device used to fixed raincloth and its protective device

— Local water drain slot: Refers to the water drain slot used to guide rain flow above driver door (or window) and passenger door, both sides of front windshield

— Flexible protruding part of splash proof system

— Retractable step plate, entering/exiting slope of bus, lifting platform and equivalent that is in the retract state

— Locking device, hinge, handle, controller, switch

— Tyre failure signal device

— Tyre pressure indicator

— Deformed part of tyre wall directly above contact point between tyre and ground

— Reversing assistance device

— Exhaust tail pipe

Components not included in the vehicle height measurements:

Soft part of antenna

Device without laden function:

— Intake duct

— Indirect view device

— Current collecting device of electric vehicle (including its fixing device)

— Vehicle rear air guide device is removable or folding, and its deployed and retracted length is no more than 2,000 mm and 200 mm respectively.

— Tailboard, entering/exiting slope and equivalent with a horizontal length not exceeding 300 mm in retract state

— Tail ladder

Your Rights

Depending on local law, you may have the following rights regarding your personal data: the right to object or withdraw consent, the right to access, update, and correct inaccuracies of your personal data, the right to have your personal data restricted or deleted, the right to receive your personal data and request its transfer to another organization where technically feasible, and the right to be informed of and lodge a complaint with your local data protection authority.

Contact Us

To make a query, raise a concern, or exercise your data subject rights, please feel free to contact us at privacy@mychery.com. This applies if you are based within the European Economic Area and the UK.

We take your privacy seriously and aim to respond to you within one month or within the timeline specified by the relevant local privacy protection law, after confirming your identity.

If you believe that we have not adequately addressed your complaints or concerns, you have the right to lodge a complaint with a competent data protection authority.

A

A/C Setting 106
Active Speed Limit (ASL) (If Equipped) 180
Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) System 173
Adjusting Steering Wheel 34
Advanced Driver Assistance System (ADAS) 239
After Starting Engine 12
Air Conditioning System 105
Air Outlets Airflow Control 113
Airbag 162
Anti-lock Brake System (ABS) ... 211
Audio Button 101
Audio System 96
Audio View 96
Authorized Service centre is at Your Service 260
Auto Hold System (AUTO HOLD) 156
Automatic Emergency Braking (AEB) System/Front Collision Warning (FCW) System 193
Automatic Transmission 159

B

Back Door 142
Backup Power Supply (12 V) 140
Battery 285
Before Starting Engine 11
Blind Spot Detection Assist System 187
Blind Spot Detection Assist System (BSD) 187
Brake System 153
Braking Force Control System ... 209

C

Charging Device 224
Check the Exhaust System 14
Checking Fuse 250
Child Lock 87
Child Restraint System 62
Column Shift Switch 160
Contact Us 288
Control Center 97
Correct Sitting Posture 47
Countermeasures for Abnormal Problems during Upgrading 130
Cruise Control System (CCS) (If Equipped) 171
Cybersecurity Notice for Scrapping or Resale 20
Cybersecurity Support Service Update or Termination Notice 20

D

Data Privacy 239
Delivery Inspection Certificate 4
Door Mechanical Switch 86
Door Opening Warning (DOW) System 189
Door Unlocking/Locking 84
Doors 84
Drive Motor 283
Driver Drowsiness and Attention Warning (DDAW) 239
Driver Monitoring System (DMS) 201
Driver Seat Memory Function (If Equipped) 55
Driving on Road Covered with Ice and Snow 18
Driving Safety Assist System 190

E

Easy Seat Access/Exit Function (If Equipped) 55
ECALL (If Equipped) 242
Effective Range 78
Electric Parking Brake System (EPB) 153
Electric Power Steering System (EPS) 152
Electronic Stability Control System 209
Emergency Lane Keeping (ELK) 184
Enabling and Disabling Front Passenger Airbag (If Equipped) .. 69
Engine Performance 282

Extended Function 213
Exterior Lighting 41

F

"Face to face" Consultative Service Card 5
Follow Me Home Function 45
Foot Brake 157
Fragrance System (If Equipped) 114
Front A/C 105
Front Compartment Cover 141
Front Passenger Seat Massage Function (If Equipped) 52
Front Seat 48
Front USB 140
Fuel System 283
Fuel Tank Cap 146
Fuse 248
Fuse and Relay Box Layout 249

H

Hazard Light 242
Head Restraint 48
Head Up Display (HUD) (If Equipped) 190
Headlight Leveling Adjusting 44
Hill Descent Control (HDC) System (if equipped) 210
Horn 33
How to Read This Manual 2
How to Save Fuel and Extend Life of Vehicle 10

I

Immobilizer System 83
Index 2
Inside Rear View Mirror 34
Inspection and Preparation Before Driving 150
Installing Child Restraint System .. 67
Installing Towing Eyelet 254
Instrument Cluster Overview 23
Intelligent Cruise Control System 197
Intelligent High Beam Assist (IHC) 46
Interior Lighting 43
Introduction of product functions 131

J

Jump-starting 256

K

Key Information 75
Keyless Entry 79

L

Lane Assist System 181
Lane Assist System (If Equipped) 181
Lane Departure Prevention (LDP) 183
Lane Departure Warning (LDW) . 181
Lane Keep Assist System (LKA) (If Equipped) 186
Light Bulb Specification 286
Lighting System 41

M

Manual Back Door 142
Method for Entering Vehicle Upgrade 120

N

Never Drive Through Flooded Water 16
New Vehicle Break-in 9
New Vehicle Inspection 4
Normal Maintenance 262

O

Off-road Driving 15
Operation of Upgrade Now 121

Operation/Malfunction Indicator ... 25
OTA Upgrade (if equipped)..... 120
OTA Upgrade 120
Outside Rear View Mirror 35
Outside Rear View Mirror Memory Function (If Equipped) .. 37

P

Panoramic Moon Roof 91
Panoramic Moon Roof (If Equipped) 91
Panoramic View Monitor System (AVM)..... 202
Parking Assist System 202
Parking on Slope 13
Parking Operations 12
Parking Radar System..... 206
Phone-link 102
Pictorial Index 2
Plug-in Hybrid Electric Vehicle System (PHEV) 214
Power Back Door (If Equipped).. 142
Power Battery 214, 284
Power Windows..... 87

R

Rear Collision Warning (RCW) System (If Equipped) 190
Rear Cross Traffic Alert (RCTA) System..... 190
Rear USB 140
Rear View Mirror..... 34
Rear View Mirror Automatic Adjustment When Reversing..... 37
Recommended Child Restraint Systems 64
Reflective Vest 243
Refrigeration/Warming Function of Armrest Box..... 113
Regular Maintenance 275
Remote Control System (if equipped) 131
Remote Control System..... 131
Remote Starting for Smart Key 84
Removing Battery 255
Repair and Maintenance..... 260
Repairing Tyre in Emergency..... 244
Replacing Wiper Blade 40

S

Safety Check 11, 261
Seat..... 47
Seat Belt 56
Seat Belt Pretensioner (If Equipped) 61
Seat Heating Function (If Equipped) 53
Seat Ventilation Function (If Equipped) 54
Second Row Manual Seat..... 50
Second Row Seat Heating (If Equipped) 54
Setting 97
Smart Key 75
Smart Key Vehicle Locating..... 83
Smart Vehicle Locating Function .. 45
Spare Tools 244
Speed Limit Assist System (SLA) (If Equipped)..... 171
Speed Limit System 171
Steering System 152
Steering Wheel..... 33
Storage Space 137
Sun Visors and Vanity Mirrors 141
Suspension System 284
Symbols in the Manual 3

T

Table of Contents.....2
Technical Data 275
Third Row Manual Seat 51
Top Tether 65
Towing Hook 252
Traffic Jam Assist (TJA) System /Integrated Cruise Assist (ICA) System..... 197
Traffic Sign Recognition System (If Equipped) 171
Transmission 159
Tyre Chains 18
Tyre Pressure Monitoring System (TPMS)..... 191

U

USB Port 140

V

Vehicle Arming 81
Vehicle Components That Are Not Included in the Vehicle Size 286
Vehicle Dimensions 280
Vehicle Performance 282
Vehicle Power Mode 150
Vehicle Power-off 151
Vehicle Power-on 150
Vehicle Type 281
Vehicle Weight 281
Voice Recognition Function 102

W

Wheel Alignment 285
Wheels and Tyres 285
When Driving 12
When Driving on Slippery Road Surfaces 16
Window Jam Protection Function (If Equipped) 90
Window Remote Control Function 89
Windows 87
Winter Driving Tips 17
Wiper Operation 38
Wiper System 38
Wireless Charging (If Equipped) 116

Y

Your Rights 288

Emergency Response Guide

1-1. RESCUE INFORMATION

Rescue Card Information.....2

Vehicle Basic Information 3

Safety Sign Information.....4

Disconnecting 12 V Battery....6

High Voltage Power Release Method.....6

Unlocking Charging Gun 6

Emergency Unlocking of Electronic Lock (Only for AC Charging) 7

1-2. EMERGENCY HANDLING PROCEDURE INFORMATION

Parking Operations.....8

Vehicle Power-off 8

Back Door Emergency Opening.....9

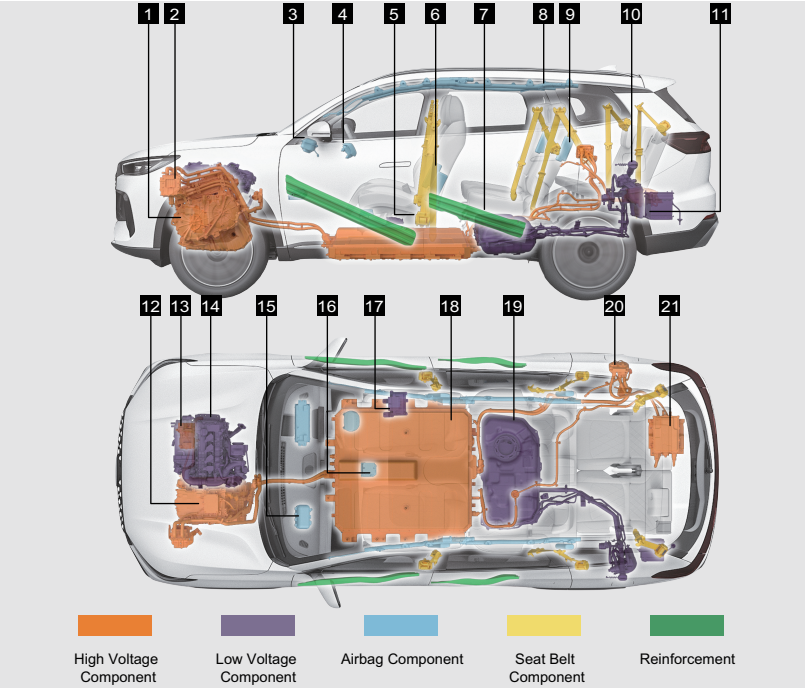
Protection Device Required for Rescuer..... 10

Emergency Rescue 11

Towing Vehicle..... 15

1-1. RESCUE INFORMATION

Rescue Card Information



1 Hybrid Transmission	2 Front Motor Controller	3 Front Passenger Airbag
4 Driver Airbag	5 Seat Belt Pretensioner (If Equipped)	6 Side Airbag (If Equipped)
7 Anti-collision Panel	8 Side Curtain (If Equipped)	9 Second Row Side Airbag (if equipped)
10 Fuel Filler	11 Battery (12 V)	12 High Voltage Power Distribution Unit
13 Electric Compressor	14 Engine	15 Driver Knee Airbag (If Equipped)
16 Airbag Module	17 Vehicle Control Unit	18 Power Battery
19 High Pressure Fuel Tank	20 AC/DC Charging Port	21 Vehicle-mounted Charger Assembly

⚠ WARNING

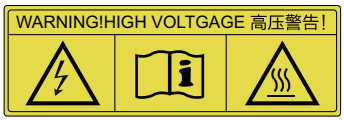
- In case of traffic accident, do not touch high voltage component and high voltage wire harness in the illustration to avoid serious injury or even death.
- When cutting the vehicle for rescue, avoid the components in the illustration and the rescuer must wear basic rescue protective device. Select high voltage rescue protective device or fire rescue protective device according to the site situation. Failure to follow the instructions may cause personal injury or even death.

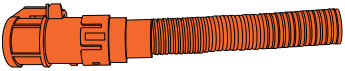
Vehicle Basic Information

Overall Size	Length (mm)	4725
	Width (mm)	1860
	Height (mm)	1705
Wheel Base (mm)		2710
Manufacturer Maximum Total Weight (kg)		2585
Seating Capacity (-Including Driver) (Person)		5 / 7

Battery cells	Monomer nominal voltage (V)	3.13
Power battery assembly	Battery pack rated capacity (kwh)	18.404
	Battery pack nominal voltage (V)	350.56
	Number of battery pack (pieces)	1
Fuel tank capacity (L)	60	

Safety Sign Information

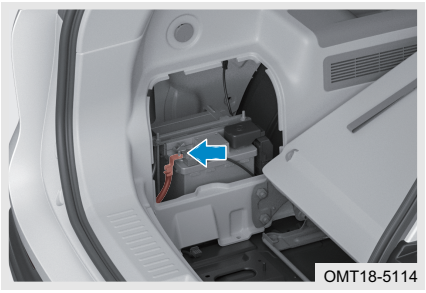
Warning Sign Name	Warning Sign Pattern	Warning Sign Description
High Voltage Warning Sign 1		Never touch high voltage system components. Never depress! Danger!
High Voltage Warning Sign 2		High voltage system components, be careful, Danger! Never touch high voltage system components without wearing protection device, beware of electric shock!
High Voltage Warning Sign 3		High voltage system components, be careful, Danger! Never touch high voltage system components without wearing protection device, beware of electric shock and high temperature scald!
High Voltage Warning Sign 4		High voltage system components, be careful, Danger! Never touch high voltage system components without wearing protection device, beware of electric shock and high temperature scald!
High Voltage Warning Sign 5		High voltage system components, be careful, Danger! Never touch high voltage system components without wearing protection device, beware of electric shock and high temperature scald!

High Voltage Warning Sign 6		High voltage system components, be careful, Danger! Never touch high voltage system components without wearing protection device, beware of electric shock and high temperature scald!
High Voltage Wire Harness Sign		Vehicle high voltage system components are connected by orange high voltage wire harness. Never touch high voltage system components without wearing protection device!
Power Battery Pack Warning Sign		Usage precautions for power battery pack!

⚠ WARNING

- After vehicle is started, power system will be hot. Be careful of high voltage and high temperature, and always follow the instructions on the vehicle safety warning signs.
- Never touch, remove or replace parts with high voltage warning marks, orange cables and connectors on vehicle to prevent high voltage electric shock.
- Not every high voltage component is labeled. Rescuer must wear basic rescue protective device when cutting a vehicle. Select high voltage rescue protective device or fire protective device according to the site situation. Failure to follow the instructions may cause personal injury or even death.

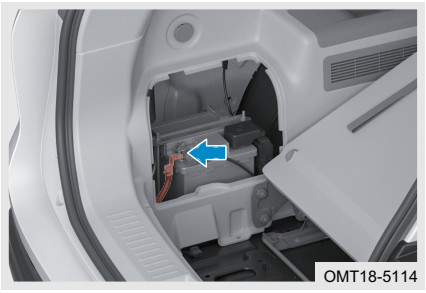
Disconnecting 12 V Battery



Step 1: Click " OFF " button on shortcut menu, switch vehicle to power off state;

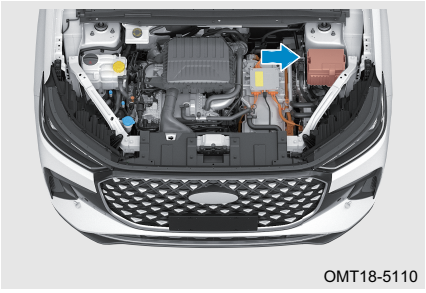
Step 2: Open the tail door and remove the left trunk guard Plate, disconnect battery (12 volts) negative cable;

High Voltage Power Release Method



Step 1: Click " OFF " button on shortcut menu, switch vehicle to power off state;

Step 2: Open the tail door and remove the left trunk guard Plate, disconnect battery (12 volts) negative cable;

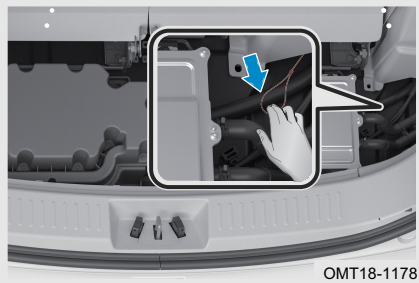


Step 3: Remove front compartment fuse box cover, refer to fuse box location diagram at fuse box upper cover, pull BMS fuse out by a fuse remover and disconnect the BMS module power.

Unlocking Charging Gun

During charging, the charging gun will be locked automatically. With charging not completed/stopped: If vehicle is in the armed state, press the unlock button on smart key twice continuously to unlock the charging gun and stop charging; if vehicle is in the disarming state, stop the charging power output or click Slow Charger Unlock on the New Energy screen to unlock the charging gun. After charging is completed: If vehicle is in the disarming state, charging gun will unlock automatically; if vehicle is in the armed state, charging gun will remain be locked, and can only be unlocked after disarming. The charging gun can only be unplugged after it is unlocked. Never operate it forcibly.

Emergency Unlocking of Electronic Lock (Only for AC Charging)



If charging gun cannot be unplugged from AC charging port by pressing and holding the upper button of charging gun, it can be released manually by using the cable.

Step 1: Make sure that the vehicle is not charged at present according to charging information displayed on instrument cluster;

Step 2: Open the back door and lift the luggage compartment carpet;

Step 3: Pull charging gun release cable to release charging gun manually.

⚠ CAUTION

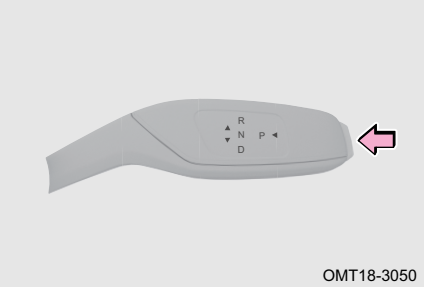
Release cable can only be used when charging gun cannot be released from charging port by conventional methods. Continuous use may cause damage to release cable or charging device.

⚠ WARNING

- Do not try to unplug charging gun while pulling release cable. Be sure to pull release cable before trying to unplug charging gun from charging port. Failure to do so may cause electric shock and serious injuries.
- Do not perform this operation when charging vehicle or any orange high voltage cable is exposed; Failure to do so may cause electric shock and serious injuries or vehicle damage; If you are not sure how to perform operation safely, please contact the authorized service station immediately.

1-2. EMERGENCY HANDLING PROCEDURE INFORMATION

Parking Operations



OMT18-3050

Depress brake pedal, and park the vehicle smoothly. Press P button to shift the gear position to P, "Ⓟ" red indicator on instrument cluster remains on, indicating that parking function is activated.

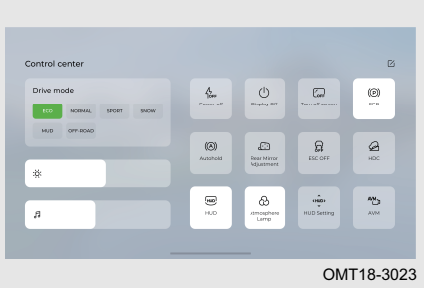
Vehicle Power-off

Normal power-off


OMT18-3022

Method 1: With vehicle powered on, driver seat not occupied, four doors closed, and gear position in P, perform vehicle locking operation, and the vehicle is powered off.

Method 2: With vehicle in READY state, driver door open, driver seat not occupied, gear position in P, turn the vehicle to power-on state, close the four doors, and perform vehicle locking operation, the vehicle is powered off.



OMT18-3023

Method 3: With vehicle powered on or in READY state, gear position in P, click "OFF" button on quick menu, the vehicle is powered off. The next time the driver uses vehicle, it is not possible to automatically power on the vehicle, directly depress brake pedal to start vehicle, and "READY" green indicator on instrument cluster remains on.

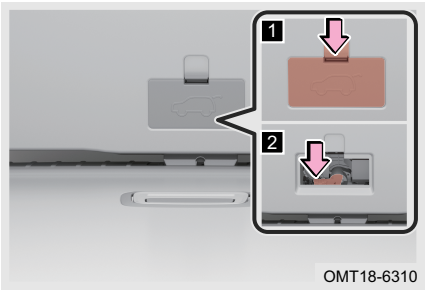
Automatic power-off

With vehicle powered on, driver seat not occupied, four doors closed, and gear position in P, the vehicle is powered off automatically after parking for 90 minutes.

⚠ WARNING

- Do not touch high temperature components (such as engine, exhaust pipe, radiator) immediately after engine has just stopped, otherwise, burns may occur.
- It is forbidden to park on dry leaves, hay or other flammable materials or allow the vehicle to idle for a long time. When engine is running or the vehicle is just stopped, high temperature of exhaust pipe may cause fire.

Back Door Emergency Opening



1 Get in the rear of vehicle and open emergency device cover;

2 Press the emergency device switch with hand, release it, and then push the back door to open it.

Protection Device Required for Rescuer



Basic Rescue Protection Device:

1 High Resistance Safety Work Shoes

2 Cotton Gloves

3 Protective Gloves

High Voltage Rescue Protection Device:

4 High Voltage Power Specialist Protective Clothing

5 Rubber Sheet

6 Safety Helmet with Goggles

Fire Rescue Protection Device:

7 Compressed Air Breathing Mask

8 Thermal Imaging Camera

> ⚠ WARNING
>
> Rescuer must wear basic rescue protective device. Select high voltage rescue protective device or fire rescue protective device according to the site situation. Failure to follow the instructions may cause personal injury or even death.

Emergency Rescue

> ⚠ WARNING
>
> When the vehicle needs emergency rescue, be sure to inform the rescuer that the vehicle is equipped with power battery, and please transfer the rescue information manual to rescuer.

How to avoid water intrusion into high voltage components

1. When a vehicle is flooded, first pull the vehicle out of the water and then cut off the high voltage power supply to avoid greater electric shock hazard due to vehicle immersion.
2. When washing the vehicle, avoid washing the charging port cover switch area with a high pressure water gun, otherwise it may cause the charging port cover to open and cause water to enter the charging port end.
3. Do not charge when there are obvious water stains in the charging port to avoid damage to the vehicle or charging device; When charging the vehicle, do not wash the charging port area to avoid damage to the vehicle or charging device.
4. Do not wipe the door protective panel with wet tissue, wet cloth, detergent etc. Pay attention to protection during the use of vehicle (such as on rainy days, washing vehicle) and try to avoid water intrusion into the door protective panel, otherwise it may cause internal electrical component fault etc.
5. Try to choose a place with a shelter for charging in the severe convective weather; If the vehicle is soaked in water or wading level is above the doorsill position, it may cause water to enter into the high pressure components. It is necessary to contact authorized service station for proper test and treatment in time; Never drive on a road when water exceeds half of the tires.
6. Try not to drive on a road with unknown depth of water to avoid leakage accidents or damage to high voltage electrical components; If wading is necessary, analyze the road condition and confirm the depth of water before driving, and the water depth should not be higher than the bottom of the body; It is recommended not to stay in deep water for a long time during wading, otherwise vehicle high voltage components may be damaged.

Driving in wade

■ When vehicle drives in wade:

1. If you cannot drive the vehicle away from the waterlogged area, please cut off power supply immediately.
2. When driving in wade, do not stop the vehicle and keep driving at low speed (vehicle speed cannot exceed 10 km/h).
3. Drive the vehicle away from the waterlogged area and park it in a safe area. Check if there is any water in the vehicle, and clean it if there is.

■ After vehicle drives in wade:

1. If the vehicle is severely flooded, all persons in the vehicle must evacuate to a safe area immediately.
2. After the vehicle drives in wade, slightly depress the brake pedal several times to remove any residual water from the brake disc and ensure that the brake system can work properly.
3. Go to authorized service station for routine inspection as soon as possible, as water may enter into components of the drive train system and dilute the grease, causing system malfunction when vehicle drives in wade.

Fire prevention

■ In order to prevent vehicle fires effectively, pay attention to the following precautions during usage:

1. Do not leave flammable and explosive materials in the vehicle.

In hot summer, the internal temperature of the vehicle parked in the sun can reach more than 70℃. If lighters, cleaner, perfume and other flammable and explosive materials are left in the vehicle, it is very easy to cause fire or even explosion.

2. After smoking, make sure that the cigarette butt is completely extinguished.

Smoking is not only harmful to health, but also may cause fires. If the cigarette butt is not completely extinguished, it may cause a fire.

3. It is recommended to regularly go to authorized service station for inspection.

Check the engine compartment for oil leakage regularly and clean any oil stain or oil on the engine in time.

Check regularly if vehicle circuits, electrical appliances and wire harness connectors, insulation and fixing position are normal. If any problem is found, handle it in time.

4. Do not modify vehicle circuits or add electrical components.

   a. It is strictly prohibited to use fuses or other metal wires that exceed the rated specifications of electrical appliances to replace fuses.

   b. Installation of other electrical appliances (such as high power audio and light) can cause excessive load on circuits, and wire harness is prone to heating, causing fires. Improper modification of electrical appliances and circuits can create contact resistance and abnormal heating, causing fires.

5. Precautions for driving.

When parking the vehicle, especially in summer, it is important to check underneath for flammable substances, such as hay, dead branches and leaves, or wheat straw. If there are flammable substances under the vehicle, it is very likely to cause fires. When driving, the vehicle should also avoid roads

covered with flammable materials such as dry leaves, wheat straw and weed etc. as much as possible, or stop vehicle in time to check underneath for flammable materials after passing through such roads. When parking, try to avoid areas exposed to sunlight as much as possible.

6. Always leave portable fire extinguishers in the vehicle and master the usage methods.

To ensure vehicle safety, fire extinguishers should be equipped in the vehicle and regularly inspected and replaced; At the same time, it is important to be familiar with the usage of fire extinguishers and be prepared to avoid being helpless in case of accidents.

7. When repairing or maintaining a vehicle, it is necessary to disconnect the 12 V battery power after the vehicle high voltage power is cut off.

Fire treatment

■ If the vehicle is on fire, take effective measures promptly and calmly to minimize losses:

1. After the accident occurs, contact the insurance company for post-treatment in time.
2. After the fire department extinguishes the fire, ask for a police certificate and a statement of the fire cause.
3. Call to report to the police in time, at the same time, call the reporting phone number of the insured insurance company and request the insurance company for on-site treatment.
4. Generally, a fire has early warning signs (such as abnormal noise or odor from body). Once abnormal conditions are found, stop the vehicle and power off in time, and carry out active rescue according to the actual situation.
5. If smoke is found in the front compartment, do not open the front compartment cover immediately (As doing so will intensify the combustion and spread of the fire due to a large amount of air. Because the combustion material in the front compartment is limited, closing the front compartment cover can control the slow burning of the fire, which is conducive to extinguishing it).
6. If fire occurs, leave the dangerous area immediately and call the fire telephone. Be sure to inform the rescuers that this is a hybrid vehicle, and deliver the onboard rescue information manual to the rescuers.

⚠ WARNING
When fire occurs, never touch any part of vehicle directly. Keep away from the vehicle and wait for professional rescuers wearing appropriate protective device to operate it.

Power battery leakage

If power battery leaks, leave the dangerous area immediately and call the fire telephone. Be sure to inform the rescuers that this is a hybrid vehicle, and deliver the onboard rescue information manual to the rescuers.

⚠ WARNING
High voltage battery liquid leakage caused by collision can only be operated by professional rescuers who wear protective mask and solvent-isolation gloves. Do not touch liquid directly.

Vehicle cutting area

Vehicle pillar uses cast aluminum alloy to protect personal safety. If it is necessary to cut during rescue, proper tools should be used. It is forbidden to cut the high temperature and high voltage areas of the vehicle.

⚠ WARNING
When cutting the vehicle, professional rescuers must use appropriate tools such as hydraulic cutter etc. and wear appropriate personal protective device to avoid serious personal injuries.

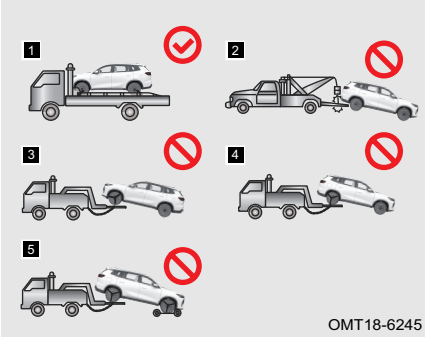
Towing Vehicle

If the vehicle needs to be towed, it is recommended to contact authorized service station or professional towing services department, or ask for help from the roadside rescue service organization you have joined.

⚠ WARNING

- Damage caused by transportation is not covered by the warranty.
- To transport the vehicle, follow the instructions below strictly.
- Do not tow your vehicle only with ropes or chains by other vehicles.

Using platform trailer



Please use **1** platform rescue vehicle to load your vehicle.

Vehicle towing precautions are as follow:

- Tow with four wheels off ground. Do not use the rescue method **2** **3** **4** **5** shown in the figure.
- Before towing, shift the gear position to N, turn on hazard light, and close the doors.
- During towing, nobody is allowed to seat in the accident vehicle.

⚠ CAUTION

Do not move the vehicle with forklift when vehicle is broken down.

⚠ WARNING

- No person or object is allowed behind the trailer when the vehicle is pulled onto the platform rescue vehicle, otherwise it may cause personal injury or death.
- The vehicle can only be towed away from the site if there is no safety risk. If the vehicle power battery pack has deformation, leakage, smoke, etc., the safety risk should be solved first.

T18FL4 PHEV RHD

Version No.: T18FL4PHEVRHDOM25ENUK01